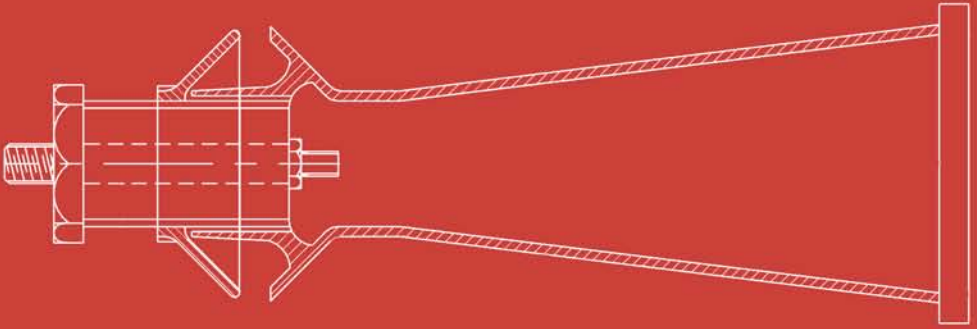


# Industrial Heating

Principles, Techniques, Materials, Applications, and Design



Yeshvant V. Deshmukh

# Industrial Heating

Principles, Techniques, Materials, Applications, and Design

# MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

A Series of Textbooks and Reference Books

*Founding Editor*

**L. L. Faulkner**

*Columbus Division, Battelle Memorial Institute  
and Department of Mechanical Engineering  
The Ohio State University  
Columbus, Ohio*

1. *Spring Designer's Handbook*, Harold Carlson
2. *Computer-Aided Graphics and Design*, Daniel L. Ryan
3. *Lubrication Fundamentals*, J. George Wills
4. *Solar Engineering for Domestic Buildings*, William A. Himmelman
5. *Applied Engineering Mechanics: Statics and Dynamics*, G. Boothroyd and C. Poli
6. *Centrifugal Pump Clinic*, Igor J. Karassik
7. *Computer-Aided Kinetics for Machine Design*, Daniel L. Ryan
8. *Plastics Products Design Handbook, Part A: Materials and Components; Part B: Processes and Design for Processes*, edited by Edward Miller
9. *Turbomachinery: Basic Theory and Applications*, Earl Logan, Jr.
10. *Vibrations of Shells and Plates*, Werner Soedel
11. *Flat and Corrugated Diaphragm Design Handbook*, Mario Di Giovanni
12. *Practical Stress Analysis in Engineering Design*, Alexander Blake
13. *An Introduction to the Design and Behavior of Bolted Joints*, John H. Bickford
14. *Optimal Engineering Design: Principles and Applications*, James N. Siddall
15. *Spring Manufacturing Handbook*, Harold Carlson
16. *Industrial Noise Control: Fundamentals and Applications*, edited by Lewis H. Bell
17. *Gears and Their Vibration: A Basic Approach to Understanding Gear Noise*, J. Derek Smith
18. *Chains for Power Transmission and Material Handling: Design and Applications Handbook*, American Chain Association
19. *Corrosion and Corrosion Protection Handbook*, edited by Philip A. Schweitzer
20. *Gear Drive Systems: Design and Application*, Peter Lynwander
21. *Controlling In-Plant Airborne Contaminants: Systems Design and Calculations*, John D. Constance
22. *CAD/CAM Systems Planning and Implementation*, Charles S. Knox
23. *Probabilistic Engineering Design: Principles and Applications*, James N. Siddall
24. *Traction Drives: Selection and Application*, Frederick W. Heilich III and Eugene E. Shube
25. *Finite Element Methods: An Introduction*, Ronald L. Huston and Chris E. Passerello

26. *Mechanical Fastening of Plastics: An Engineering Handbook*, Brayton Lincoln, Kenneth J. Gomes, and James F. Braden
27. *Lubrication in Practice: Second Edition*, edited by W. S. Robertson
28. *Principles of Automated Drafting*, Daniel L. Ryan
29. *Practical Seal Design*, edited by Leonard J. Martini
30. *Engineering Documentation for CAD/CAM Applications*, Charles S. Knox
31. *Design Dimensioning with Computer Graphics Applications*, Jerome C. Lange
32. *Mechanism Analysis: Simplified Graphical and Analytical Techniques*, Lyndon O. Barton
33. *CAD/CAM Systems: Justification, Implementation, Productivity Measurement*, Edward J. Preston, George W. Crawford, and Mark E. Coticchia
34. *Steam Plant Calculations Manual*, V. Ganapathy
35. *Design Assurance for Engineers and Managers*, John A. Burgess
36. *Heat Transfer Fluids and Systems for Process and Energy Applications*, Jasbir Singh
37. *Potential Flows: Computer Graphic Solutions*, Robert H. Kirchhoff
38. *Computer-Aided Graphics and Design: Second Edition*, Daniel L. Ryan
39. *Electronically Controlled Proportional Valves: Selection and Application*, Michael J. Tonyan, edited by Tobi Goldoftas
40. *Pressure Gauge Handbook*, AMETEK, U.S. Gauge Division, edited by Philip W. Harland
41. *Fabric Filtration for Combustion Sources: Fundamentals and Basic Technology*, R. P. Donovan
42. *Design of Mechanical Joints*, Alexander Blake
43. *CAD/CAM Dictionary*, Edward J. Preston, George W. Crawford, and Mark E. Coticchia
44. *Machinery Adhesives for Locking, Retaining, and Sealing*, Girard S. Haviland
45. *Couplings and Joints: Design, Selection, and Application*, Jon R. Mancuso
46. *Shaft Alignment Handbook*, John Piotrowski
47. *BASIC Programs for Steam Plant Engineers: Boilers, Combustion, Fluid Flow, and Heat Transfer*, V. Ganapathy
48. *Solving Mechanical Design Problems with Computer Graphics*, Jerome C. Lange
49. *Plastics Gearing: Selection and Application*, Clifford E. Adams
50. *Clutches and Brakes: Design and Selection*, William C. Orthwein
51. *Transducers in Mechanical and Electronic Design*, Harry L. Trietley
52. *Metallurgical Applications of Shock-Wave and High-Strain-Rate Phenomena*, edited by Lawrence E. Murr, Karl P. Staudhammer, and Marc A. Meyers
53. *Magnesium Products Design*, Robert S. Busk
54. *How to Integrate CAD/CAM Systems: Management and Technology*, William D. Engelke
55. *Cam Design and Manufacture: Second Edition; with cam design software for the IBM PC and compatibles*, disk included, Preben W. Jensen
56. *Solid-State AC Motor Controls: Selection and Application*, Sylvester Campbell
57. *Fundamentals of Robotics*, David D. Ardayfio
58. *Belt Selection and Application for Engineers*, edited by Wallace D. Erickson
59. *Developing Three-Dimensional CAD Software with the IBM PC*, C. Stan Wei
60. *Organizing Data for CIM Applications*, Charles S. Knox, with contributions by Thomas C. Boos, Ross S. Culverhouse, and Paul F. Muchnicki
61. *Computer-Aided Simulation in Railway Dynamics*, by Rao V. Dukkipati and Joseph R. Amyot

62. *Fiber-Reinforced Composites: Materials, Manufacturing, and Design*, P. K. Mallick
63. *Photoelectric Sensors and Controls: Selection and Application*, Scott M. Juds
64. *Finite Element Analysis with Personal Computers*, Edward R. Champion, Jr. and J. Michael Ensminger
65. *Ultrasonics: Fundamentals, Technology, Applications: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Dale Ensminger
66. *Applied Finite Element Modeling: Practical Problem Solving for Engineers*, Jeffrey M. Steele
67. *Measurement and Instrumentation in Engineering: Principles and Basic Laboratory Experiments*, Francis S. Tse and Ivan E. Morse
68. *Centrifugal Pump Clinic: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Igor J. Karassik
69. *Practical Stress Analysis in Engineering Design: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Alexander Blake
70. *An Introduction to the Design and Behavior of Bolted Joints: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, John H. Bickford
71. *High Vacuum Technology: A Practical Guide*, Marsbed H. Hablani
72. *Pressure Sensors: Selection and Application*, Duane Tandeske
73. *Zinc Handbook: Properties, Processing, and Use in Design*, Frank Porter
74. *Thermal Fatigue of Metals*, Andrzej Weroniski and Tadeusz Hejwowski
75. *Classical and Modern Mechanisms for Engineers and Inventors*, Preben W. Jensen
76. *Handbook of Electronic Package Design*, edited by Michael Pecht
77. *Shock-Wave and High-Strain-Rate Phenomena in Materials*, edited by Marc A. Meyers, Lawrence E. Murr, and Karl P. Staudhammer
78. *Industrial Refrigeration: Principles, Design and Applications*, P. C. Koelet
79. *Applied Combustion*, Eugene L. Keating
80. *Engine Oils and Automotive Lubrication*, edited by Wilfried J. Bartz
81. *Mechanism Analysis: Simplified and Graphical Techniques, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Lyndon O. Barton
82. *Fundamental Fluid Mechanics for the Practicing Engineer*, James W. Murdock
83. *Fiber-Reinforced Composites: Materials, Manufacturing, and Design, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, P. K. Mallick
84. *Numerical Methods for Engineering Applications*, Edward R. Champion, Jr.
85. *Turbomachinery: Basic Theory and Applications, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Earl Logan, Jr.
86. *Vibrations of Shells and Plates: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Werner Soedel
87. *Steam Plant Calculations Manual: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, V. Ganapathy
88. *Industrial Noise Control: Fundamentals and Applications, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Lewis H. Bell and Douglas H. Bell
89. *Finite Elements: Their Design and Performance*, Richard H. MacNeal
90. *Mechanical Properties of Polymers and Composites: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Lawrence E. Nielsen and Robert F. Landel
91. *Mechanical Wear Prediction and Prevention*, Raymond G. Bayer
92. *Mechanical Power Transmission Components*, edited by David W. South and Jon R. Mancuso
93. *Handbook of Turbomachinery*, edited by Earl Logan, Jr.

94. *Engineering Documentation Control Practices and Procedures*, Ray E. Monahan
95. *Refractory Linings Thermomechanical Design and Applications*, Charles A. Schacht
96. *Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing: Applications and Techniques for Use in Design, Manufacturing, and Inspection*, James D. Meadows
97. *An Introduction to the Design and Behavior of Bolted Joints: Third Edition, Revised and Expanded*, John H. Bickford
98. *Shaft Alignment Handbook: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, John Piotrowski
99. *Computer-Aided Design of Polymer-Matrix Composite Structures*, edited by Suong Van Hoa
100. *Friction Science and Technology*, Peter J. Blau
101. *Introduction to Plastics and Composites: Mechanical Properties and Engineering Applications*, Edward Miller
102. *Practical Fracture Mechanics in Design*, Alexander Blake
103. *Pump Characteristics and Applications*, Michael W. Volk
104. *Optical Principles and Technology for Engineers*, James E. Stewart
105. *Optimizing the Shape of Mechanical Elements and Structures*, A. A. Seireg and Jorge Rodriguez
106. *Kinematics and Dynamics of Machinery*, Vladimír Stejskal and Michael Valásek
107. *Shaft Seals for Dynamic Applications*, Les Horve
108. *Reliability-Based Mechanical Design*, edited by Thomas A. Cruse
109. *Mechanical Fastening, Joining, and Assembly*, James A. Speck
110. *Turbomachinery Fluid Dynamics and Heat Transfer*, edited by Chunill Hah
111. *High-Vacuum Technology: A Practical Guide, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Marsbed H. Hablani
112. *Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing: Workbook and Answerbook*, James D. Meadows
113. *Handbook of Materials Selection for Engineering Applications*, edited by G. T. Murray
114. *Handbook of Thermoplastic Piping System Design*, Thomas Sixsmith and Reinhard Hanselka
115. *Practical Guide to Finite Elements: A Solid Mechanics Approach*, Steven M. Lepi
116. *Applied Computational Fluid Dynamics*, edited by Vijay K. Garg
117. *Fluid Sealing Technology*, Heinz K. Muller and Bernard S. Nau
118. *Friction and Lubrication in Mechanical Design*, A. A. Seireg
119. *Influence Functions and Matrices*, Yuri A. Melnikov
120. *Mechanical Analysis of Electronic Packaging Systems*, Stephen A. McKeown
121. *Couplings and Joints: Design, Selection, and Application, Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Jon R. Mancuso
122. *Thermodynamics: Processes and Applications*, Earl Logan, Jr.
123. *Gear Noise and Vibration*, J. Derek Smith
124. *Practical Fluid Mechanics for Engineering Applications*, John J. Bloomer
125. *Handbook of Hydraulic Fluid Technology*, edited by George E. Totten
126. *Heat Exchanger Design Handbook*, T. Kuppan
127. *Designing for Product Sound Quality*, Richard H. Lyon
128. *Probability Applications in Mechanical Design*, Franklin E. Fisher and Joy R. Fisher

129. *Nickel Alloys*, edited by Ulrich Heubner
130. *Rotating Machinery Vibration: Problem Analysis and Troubleshooting*, Maurice L. Adams, Jr.
131. *Formulas for Dynamic Analysis*, Ronald L. Huston and C. Q. Liu
132. *Handbook of Machinery Dynamics*, Lynn L. Faulkner and Earl Logan, Jr.
133. *Rapid Prototyping Technology: Selection and Application*, Kenneth G. Cooper
134. *Reciprocating Machinery Dynamics: Design and Analysis*, Abdulla S. Rangwala
135. *Maintenance Excellence: Optimizing Equipment Life-Cycle Decisions*, edited by John D. Campbell and Andrew K. S. Jardine
136. *Practical Guide to Industrial Boiler Systems*, Ralph L. Vandagriff
137. *Lubrication Fundamentals: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, D. M. Pirro and A. A. Wessol
138. *Mechanical Life Cycle Handbook: Good Environmental Design and Manufacturing*, edited by Mahendra S. Hundal
139. *Micromachining of Engineering Materials*, edited by Joseph McGeough
140. *Control Strategies for Dynamic Systems: Design and Implementation*, John H. Lumkes, Jr.
141. *Practical Guide to Pressure Vessel Manufacturing*, Sunil Pullarcot
142. *Nondestructive Evaluation: Theory, Techniques, and Applications*, edited by Peter J. Shull
143. *Diesel Engine Engineering: Thermodynamics, Dynamics, Design, and Control*, Andrei Makartchouk
144. *Handbook of Machine Tool Analysis*, Ioan D. Marinescu, Constantin Ispas, and Dan Boboc
145. *Implementing Concurrent Engineering in Small Companies*, Susan Carlson Skalak
146. *Practical Guide to the Packaging of Electronics: Thermal and Mechanical Design and Analysis*, Ali Jammia
147. *Bearing Design in Machinery: Engineering Tribology and Lubrication*, Avraham Harnoy
148. *Mechanical Reliability Improvement: Probability and Statistics for Experimental Testing*, R. E. Little
149. *Industrial Boilers and Heat Recovery Steam Generators: Design, Applications, and Calculations*, V. Ganapathy
150. *The CAD Guidebook: A Basic Manual for Understanding and Improving Computer-Aided Design*, Stephen J. Schoonmaker
151. *Industrial Noise Control and Acoustics*, Randall F. Barron
152. *Mechanical Properties of Engineered Materials*, Wolé Soboyejo
153. *Reliability Verification, Testing, and Analysis in Engineering Design*, Gary S. Wasserman
154. *Fundamental Mechanics of Fluids: Third Edition*, I. G. Currie
155. *Intermediate Heat Transfer*, Kau-Fui Vincent Wong
156. *HVAC Water Chillers and Cooling Towers: Fundamentals, Application, and Operation*, Herbert W. Stanford III
157. *Gear Noise and Vibration: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, J. Derek Smith
158. *Handbook of Turbomachinery: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, edited by Earl Logan, Jr. and Ramendra Roy
159. *Piping and Pipeline Engineering: Design, Construction, Maintenance, Integrity, and Repair*, George A. Antaki

160. *Turbomachinery: Design and Theory*, Rama S. R. Gorla and Aijaz Ahmed Khan
161. *Target Costing: Market-Driven Product Design*, M. Bradford Clifton, Henry M. B. Bird, Robert E. Albano, and Wesley P. Townsend
162. *Fluidized Bed Combustion*, Simeon N. Oka
163. *Theory of Dimensioning: An Introduction to Parameterizing Geometric Models*, Vijay Srinivasan
164. *Handbook of Mechanical Alloy Design*, edited by George E. Totten, Lin Xie, and Kiyoshi Funatani
165. *Structural Analysis of Polymeric Composite Materials*, Mark E. Tuttle
166. *Modeling and Simulation for Material Selection and Mechanical Design*, edited by George E. Totten, Lin Xie, and Kiyoshi Funatani
167. *Handbook of Pneumatic Conveying Engineering*, David Mills, Mark G. Jones, and Vijay K. Agarwal
168. *Clutches and Brakes: Design and Selection, Second Edition*, William C. Orthwein
169. *Fundamentals of Fluid Film Lubrication: Second Edition*, Bernard J. Hamrock, Steven R. Schmid, and Bo O. Jacobson
170. *Handbook of Lead-Free Solder Technology for Microelectronic Assemblies*, edited by Karl J. Puttlitz and Kathleen A. Stalter
171. *Vehicle Stability*, Dean Karnopp
172. *Mechanical Wear Fundamentals and Testing: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Raymond G. Bayer
173. *Liquid Pipeline Hydraulics*, E. Shashi Menon
174. *Solid Fuels Combustion and Gasification*, Marcio L. de Souza-Santos
175. *Mechanical Tolerance Stackup and Analysis*, Bryan R. Fischer
176. *Engineering Design for Wear*, Raymond G. Bayer
177. *Vibrations of Shells and Plates: Third Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Werner Soedel
178. *Refractories Handbook*, edited by Charles A. Schacht
179. *Practical Engineering Failure Analysis*, Hani M. Tawancy, Anwar Ul-Hamid, and Nureddin M. Abbas
180. *Mechanical Alloying and Milling*, C. Suryanarayana
181. *Mechanical Vibration: Analysis, Uncertainties, and Control, Second Edition*, Revised and Expanded, Haym Benaroya
182. *Design of Automatic Machinery*, Stephen J. Derby
183. *Practical Fracture Mechanics in Design: Second Edition, Revised and Expanded*, Arun Shukla
184. *Practical Guide to Designed Experiments*, Paul D. Funkenbusch
185. *Gigacycle Fatigue in Mechanical Practice*, Claude Bathias and Paul C. Paris
186. *Selection of Engineering Materials and Adhesives*, Lawrence W. Fisher
187. *Boundary Methods: Elements, Contours, and Nodes*, Subrata Mukherjee and Yu Xie Mukherjee
188. *Rotordynamics*, Agnieszka (Agnes) Muszn´yska
189. *Pump Characteristics and Applications: Second Edition*, Michael W. Volk
190. *Reliability Engineering: Probability Models and Maintenance Methods*, Joel A. Nachlas
191. *Industrial Heating: Principles, Techniques, Materials, Applications, and Design*, Yeshvant V. Deshmukh





# Industrial Heating

Principles, Techniques, Materials, Applications, and Design

Yeshvant V. Deshmukh



Taylor & Francis  
Taylor & Francis Group

Boca Raton London New York Singapore

---

A CRC title, part of the Taylor & Francis imprint, a member of the Taylor & Francis Group, the academic division of T&F Informa plc.

CRC Press  
Taylor & Francis Group  
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300  
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

© 2005 by Taylor & Francis Group, LLC  
CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, an Informa business

No claim to original U.S. Government works  
Version Date: 20130925

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-4200-2755-6 (eBook - PDF)

This book contains information obtained from authentic and highly regarded sources. Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or the consequences of their use. The authors and publishers have attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, please access [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com) (<http://www.copyright.com/>) or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. CCC is a not-for-profit organization that provides licenses and registration for a variety of users. For organizations that have been granted a photocopy license by the CCC, a separate system of payment has been arranged.

**Trademark Notice:** Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

**Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at**  
<http://www.taylorandfrancis.com>

**and the CRC Press Web site at**  
<http://www.crcpress.com>

*Dedicated to*

*The memory of my Guru,  
(Late) Prof. G.K. (Nana) Ogle*

*Formerly  
The Principal and Head of Metallurgy  
Department  
College of Engineering—Pune, India*



---

# Contents

Preface.....	xxiii
About the Author .....	xxvii
Abstract.....	xxix
Acknowledgments.....	xxxi
<b>Chapter 1</b> Introduction .....	1
1.1 In the Beginning .....	1
1.2 Heating System Classification .....	3
1.3 Classification of Heating Modes.....	7
1.4 Auxilliary Techniques .....	10
<b>Chapter 2</b> Fluid Dynamics .....	13
2.1 Introduction .....	14
2.2 Sources of Gasses in Furnaces .....	14
2.3 Flow of Gases.....	15
2.4 Importance of Fluid Flow in Heating.....	17
2.5 Classification of Fluid Flow.....	18
2.6 Flow over Objects .....	21
2.7 Flow Separation .....	22

2.8	Forced Circulation in Enclosures .....	27
2.9	Use of Fans .....	29
2.10	Natural Gas Circulation inside Furnaces .....	29
2.11	Bernoulli's Theorem of Fluid Flow .....	32
2.12	Frictional Losses in Flow.....	35
2.13	Local Losses .....	44
2.13.1	Common Local Features .....	46
2.13.2	Gas Flow through Ports.....	48
2.13.3	Pump Power .....	49
2.14	Stack Effect.....	51
2.15	Practical Flue System .....	53

### **Chapter 3** Steady State Heat Transfer..... 57

3.1	Introduction .....	58
3.2	Steady State Conduction .....	60
3.3	The Shape Factor .....	72
3.4	Graphical Method for Wall Heat Transfer and Design .....	75
3.5	Convection.....	80
3.6	Forced Convection .....	85
3.6.1	Boundary Layer and Convection.....	86
3.6.2	Forced Convection over Flat Plate.....	88
3.6.3	Forced Convection inside Tubes .....	97
3.6.3A	Laminar Flow .....	98
3.6.3B	Turbulent Flow .....	99
3.6.4	Heat Transfer in Coils .....	108
3.7	Natural Convection (Flat Walls) .....	113
3.7.1	Free Convection over Horizontal Pipes .....	116
3.7.2	Free Convection inside Enclosures .....	121
3.8	Radiative Heat Transfer .....	124
3.9	Radiation Exchange between Bodies .....	128
3.9.1	Radiative Exchange between Two Parallel Surfaces .....	129
3.9.2	Radiative Exchange between Article and Enclosure .....	132
3.10	Radiation Screens.....	133
3.11	Radiation Exchange inside and outside Furnaces.....	137
3.12	Radiation in Absorbing Media.....	140
3.13	Radiation Loss from Furnace Openings .....	146
3.14	Extended Surfaces.....	161

<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Transient Conduction.....</b>	<b>169</b>
4.1	Introduction .....	170
4.2	Solution by Using Charts .....	171
4.3	Heating of Bodies of Finite Size .....	180
4.4	Transient Heating (Cooling) of a Semiinfinite Solid.....	189
4.4.1	Instantaneous Temperature Change at Surface.....	189
4.4.2	Constant Radiation Flux .....	192
4.4.3	Surface Heating by Convection.....	192
4.4.4	The Late Regime .....	194
4.5	Transient Conduction—Finite Differences Method .....	199
4.6	Application of the Finite Difference Method to a Multilayered Wall .....	205
4.7	Concentrated Heat Sources .....	211
4.7.1	Instantaneous Point Source.....	212
4.7.2	Continuous Sources.....	213
4.8	Transient Conduction Graphical Method (Schmidt's Method).....	219
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Fuels and their Properties.....</b>	<b>225</b>
5.1	Introduction .....	226
5.2	Properties of Fuels .....	226
5.3	Liquid Fuels.....	231
5.4	Gaseous Fuels.....	232
5.5	Biogas.....	233
5.5.1	Single Stage Generation .....	235
5.5.2	Two Stage Generator .....	236
5.6	Heating (Calorific) Value .....	238
5.7	Calculation of Calorific Value.....	240
5.8	Combustion Air Requirements and Products.....	243
5.8.1	Combustion Air and Practical Requirements. ....	245
5.8.2	Preheating of Air .....	246
5.9	Solid Waste and Garbage.....	247
5.10	Incomplete Combustion .....	249
5.11	Combustion and Pollution .....	252
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Fuel Burning Devices.....</b>	<b>275</b>
6.1	Introduction .....	276
6.2	Combustion of Liquid Fuels .....	276
6.3	Classification of Oil Burners .....	280
6.3.1	High Pressure Burners.....	281
6.3.2	Low Pressure Burners .....	281



6.4	Burners for Distillate Fuels .....	282
6.5	Preheating of Oils .....	284
6.6	Kinetics of Combustion of Gases .....	285
6.7	Burning Properties of Gases .....	287
6.8	Classification of Gas Burners.....	289
6.9	Flame Stabilization, Ignition, and Detection.....	291
6.10	Atmospheric Gas Burners .....	293
6.11	Nozzle Mixing Gas Burners .....	296
6.12	Radiant Tubes.....	298
	6.12.1 Immersion Tubes.....	300
6.13	Dual Fuel Burners .....	300
6.14	Packaged Burners .....	302
6.15	Combustion of Solid Waste and Garbage .....	303
6.16	Burner Auxilliaries.....	305
	6.16.1 Burner Blocks .....	305
	6.16.2 Ignition Devices .....	307
	6.16.3 Flame Protection Devices .....	307
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Refractories .....</b>	<b>309</b>
7.1	Introduction .....	310
7.2	Classification of Refractories.....	310
	7.2.1 Fire Clay Refractories.....	311
	7.2.2 High Alumina Refractories.....	312
	7.2.3 Silica Refractories .....	313
	7.2.4 Carbon and Graphite Refractories.....	313
	7.2.5 Silicon Carbide (SiC) and Carborundum .....	314
	7.2.6 Zircon Refractories .....	314
	7.2.7 Zirconia Refractories.....	314
7.3	Insulating Refractories and Materials .....	315
7.4	Manufacture of Refractories.....	316
	7.4.1 Raw Materials .....	316
7.5	Refractory Shapes .....	319
7.6	Unshaped Refractory Products .....	321
7.7	Refractory Fibers.....	322
7.8	Properties of Refractories .....	323
	7.8.1 Room Temperature Properties .....	325
	7.8.2 High Temperature Properties.....	326
7.9	Selection of Refractories .....	328
	7.9.1 Thermal Requirements .....	328
	7.9.2 Mechanical and Chemical Requirements.....	332

<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Metals and Alloys for High Temperature Applications .....</b>	<b>333</b>
8.1	Introduction .....	334
8.2	Mechanical Properties of Metals at High Temperature .....	334
8.3	Oxidation and Corrosion.....	340
8.3.1	Corrosion by Other Gases .....	343
8.4	Melting Point and Physical Stability.....	345
8.5	Linear Expansion .....	346
8.6	Cast Irons .....	347
8.7	Steels at High Temperature .....	349
8.8	Selection of Metals for High Temperature Application....	349
<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Electric Resistance Heating.....</b>	<b>357</b>
9.1	Introduction .....	358
9.2	Indirect Electrical Heating.....	358
9.2.1	Principles of Indirect Electric Heating.....	358
9.2.2	Material for Heaters .....	359
9.2.3	Special Insulating Materials in the Construction of a Heater .....	361
9.3	Construction and Placement of Heaters .....	368
9.4	Design of Metallic Elements .....	373
9.4.1	Determination of Wire or Strip Size.....	377
9.5	Nonmetallic Heating Elements .....	383
9.5.1	Silicon Carbide Heating Elements.....	383
9.5.2	MoSi <sub>2</sub> Heating Elements .....	385
9.6	Design Calculations for Nonmetallic Elements.....	387
9.7	Direct Resistance (Conductive) Heating (DRH).....	401
9.7.1	Principle of DRH .....	401
9.7.2	Design for DRH .....	403
9.7.3	Advantages and Limitations of DRH .....	405
9.8	Stored Energy Heating (SEH).....	408
9.8.1	Principle of Stored Energy Heating.....	409
9.8.2	Practical Heating Circuit.....	411
9.8.3	Some Peculiarities of SEH.....	411
9.9	Salt Bath Furnaces .....	414
9.9.1	Introduction .....	414
9.9.2	Construction and Working of Electrode Furnaces .....	415
9.9.3	Bath Salts .....	416
9.9.4	Some Peculiarities of Salt Baths .....	419

9.9.5	Applications of Salt Baths.....	419
9.9.6	Other Bath Furnaces .....	421
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>High Frequency Heating.....</b>	<b>423</b>
10.1	Induction Heating .....	424
10.1.1	Introduction.....	424
10.1.2	Principles of Induction Heating .....	425
10.1.3	Advantages and Disadvantages of Induction Heating.....	425
10.1.4	Skin Effect .....	428
10.1.5	Ferrous and Nonferrous Heating .....	432
10.1.6	Choice of Frequency .....	433
10.1.7	High Frequency Generators .....	437
10.1.8	Mains Frequency Generators .....	437
10.1.9	Spark Gap Generators .....	438
10.1.10	Motor Generators .....	438
10.1.11	Solid State Generators.....	440
10.1.12	Some Features of Solid State Generators .....	442
10.1.13	Radio Frequency (RF) Power Generators.....	442
10.1.14	Features of RF Generators and Heating.....	444
10.1.15	Generator and Coil Matching.....	444
10.1.16	Thermal Requirements .....	447
10.1.17	Design of the Coil.....	449
10.1.18	Electrical Design of Coil .....	450
10.1.19	Equivalent Circuit Method of Coil Design .....	453
10.1.20	Physical Design of Coils.....	456
10.2	Dielectric Heating .....	466
10.2.1	Introduction .....	466
10.2.2	Principles of Dielectric Heating .....	466
10.2.3	Review of Related Electric Properties .....	466
10.2.4	Some Noteworthy Points About Dielectric Heating .....	470
10.2.5	Applications of Dielectric Heating.....	471
10.3	Microwave Heating .....	472
10.3.1	Nature and Generation of Microwaves.....	472
10.3.2	Heat Generation by Microwaves.....	473
10.3.3	Heat Produced in Microwave Heating.....	477
10.3.4	Some Peculiarities of Microwave Heating.....	478
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Concentrated Heat Sources .....</b>	<b>485</b>
11.1	Laser.....	488
11.1.1	Introduction .....	488
11.1.2	Generation of Laser Beam.....	489

11.1.3	Noteworthy Points about Lasers.....	492
11.1.4	Limitations of Lasers .....	495
11.1.5	CO <sub>2</sub> Lasers .....	496
11.1.6	Nd-YAG Lasers .....	499
11.1.7	Ruby Lasers .....	501
11.1.8	Longitudinal Modes of Laser Beam.....	502
11.1.9	Focusing Properties of Lasers .....	504
11.1.10	Collimation.....	507
11.1.11	Coherence.....	508
11.1.12	Depth of Focus .....	508
11.1.13	Transverse Modes in Lasers.....	514
11.1.14	Temporal Characteristics of Lasers .....	515
11.1.15	Q Switching of the Laser Beam .....	517
11.1.16	Application of Lasers for Material Processing..	520
11.1.17	Laser–Material Interaction.....	523
11.1.18	Reflectivity and Absorptivity .....	526
11.1.19	Laser Penetration .....	529
11.1.20	The Temperature Field .....	531
11.2	Electron Beam Heating .....	533
11.2.1	Introduction .....	533
11.2.2	Generation of Electron Beam.....	534
11.2.3	Characteristics of EB .....	537
11.2.4	EB—Noteworthy Points.....	538
11.2.5	EB—Material Interaction.....	539
11.2.6	Commercial EB Equipment.....	541
<b>Chapter 12</b>	<b>Vacuum Engineering .....</b>	<b>543</b>
12.1	Introduction .....	544
12.2	Units for Vacuum.....	545
12.3	Vacuum Pumps .....	546
12.3.1	Positive Displacement Pump .....	547
12.3.2	Roots Pump .....	550
12.3.3	Diffusion Pumps .....	554
12.3.4	Molecular Pumps .....	557
12.4	Pumping System Design.....	558
12.4.1	Selection of Vacuum Pumps.....	558
12.4.2	Calculation of Pumping Speed .....	562
12.5	Conductance and Pumping Speed.....	564
12.6	Baffles and Traps .....	568
12.7	Outgassing .....	569
12.8	Vacuum Pumping (Pressure–Time Relations).....	574
12.9	Calculation of Pumping Time.....	587

12.10	Measurement of Vacuum .....	590
12.10.1	Mechanical Gauges.....	591
12.10.2	Conductivity Gauges .....	592
12.10.3	Ionization Gauge .....	594
<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>Protective Atmospheres.....</b>	<b>601</b>
13.1	Introduction .....	602
13.2	Manufactured Atmosphere .....	603
13.3	Pure Gas Atmospheres .....	604
13.3.1	Nitrogen .....	604
13.3.2	Hydrogen.....	604
13.3.3	Helium and Argon.....	608
13.4	Heating of Protective Atmosphere Furnace .....	608
13.5	Determination of Atmosphere Consumption.....	610
13.5.1	Batch Type.....	611
13.5.2	Continuous Type.....	612
13.6	Instrumentation for Protective Atmospheres.....	624
13.6.1	Dew Point Measurement .....	624
13.6.2	Measurement of CO, CO <sub>2</sub> , CH <sub>4</sub> , and NH <sub>3</sub> .....	627
13.6.3	Detection of Oxygen .....	628
13.6.4	Selection of Analytical Instruments .....	630
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Temperature Measurement.....</b>	<b>631</b>
14.1	Introduction .....	632
14.2	Thermocouple Pyrometers .....	634
14.3	Property Requirements of Thermocouple Materials.....	636
14.4	Practical Thermocouples .....	637
14.5	Cold Junction Compensation.....	641
14.6	Compensating Wires .....	643
14.7	Construction of Thermocouples .....	643
14.8	Selection of Thermocouples .....	645
14.9	Radiation Pyrometry.....	647
14.9.1	Principle of Radiation .....	647
14.9.2	Practical Problems .....	649
14.10	Disappearing Filament Pyrometer .....	655
14.11	Radiation Pyrometers .....	657
14.11.1	Advantages of Radiation Pyrometers .....	661
14.11.2	Limitations.....	661
14.12	Miscellaneous Temperature-Related Devices.....	662
14.12.1	Temperature Indicating Colors .....	662
14.12.2	Bimetallic Devices.....	662
14.12.3	Bimetallic Energy Regulators .....	663

14.12.4	Throwaway Tips .....	666
14.13	Temperature Indicators .....	666
14.14	Temperature Controllers .....	668
<b>Chapter 15</b>	<b>Miscellany and Further.....</b>	<b>673</b>
15.1	Introduction .....	674
15.2	Some Typical Furnaces .....	675
15.2.1	Rotating Hearth Furnace .....	675
15.2.2	Automatic Integral Quench Furnace.....	677
15.2.3	Vacuum Gas Furnace.....	680
15.2.4	Linear Continuous Furnaces.....	683
15.3	Incinerators.....	685
15.3.1	Large Scale Municipal Incinerator .....	687
15.3.2	Medium or Small Scale Incinerator.....	689
15.3.3	Domestic or Office Incinerator .....	689
15.4	Heat Exchangers .....	691
15.4.1	Classification of Heat Exchangers .....	693
15.4.2	Convective Heat Transfer over Tube Banks.....	699
15.4.3	Heat Exchanger Calculations.....	702
15.5	Drying Ovens .....	710
15.6	Baking Ovens .....	713
15.7	Fans .....	718
15.8	Some New Materials.....	723
15.8.1	Carbon Foams.....	723
15.8.2	Alumina Refractory Adhesive.....	723
15.8.3	Cast Basalt .....	724
<b>Appendices</b>		
A.	Pressure .....	725
B.	Viscosity .....	729
C.	Thermal Diffusivity.....	733
D.	Humidity .....	737
E.	Error Function.....	745
F.	Properties of Air, Water, Gases.....	749
G.	Emissivity .....	755
Bibliography	.....	757
Index	.....	763



---

# Preface

Heating is an integral part of many processes. It is used in diverse processes such as heat treating, shaping, casting, moulding, and joining fabrication, in one form or another. Food processing, drying, waste disposal, desalining, and many other operations depend on heating. The materials processed are metals, alloys, semiconductors, polymers, textiles, farm products minerals, city and industrial garbage, and so on. Each material and process requires heating methods suitable to its properties and the desired end products.

I came in contact with heating processes and the design field in the early 1960s by chance. Since then the association has graduated to consultation practice involving a wide range of heating problems. Except a few books published in the 1950s, on furnace design for mainly metallurgical industries, I found that there is no book on general design techniques for heating. In the last half-century, there have been substantial developments in heating techniques and related materials. Laser, electron beam, and microwave heating; fiber and fiber-based refractories; and powerful high vacuum pumps are some of the notable advances, that were practically nonexistent in the 1950s. The present book is an attempt to provide design information on the traditional and modern heating processes and auxiliary techniques.



The book is mainly aimed at designers engaged in the design and manufacture of furnaces, laboratory apparatus, and material processing equipment. It will also help the end users or buyers of such equipment to formalize their requirements and arrive at specifications. Research workers can design and specify their experimental setups involving heating. As the coverage of heating processes and allied techniques included in this book is very wide, almost all industries will find it as a useful design guide and source book. It will be advantageous if the reader has some basic knowledge of physics, chemistry, and mathematics upto the under graduate level in science or engineering.

The science of "heat transfer" is at the core of heating processes. The analysis of related heat transfer and estimation of the effective heat transfer coefficient is the first step toward a successful design. The book opens with a review of selected topics in steady state and transient heat transfer. A qualitative description of some topics in fluid mechanics and aerodynamics is also included because of their influence on heat transfer. Mathematical treatment is kept at the minimum possible and more attention is given to concepts underlying the phenomenon. It is my experience that due to years of separation from the academic field, the industrial community, in general, is out of touch with the basic concepts; hence the need for these reviews.

This is followed by fuels, their combustion and combustion devices. Solid fuels are excluded as they are not used in small or medium heating applications.

Garbage and waste incineration is treated in detail. I feel that the growing problem of waste disposal in urban and industrial areas all over the world is bound to make incineration on large scale a necessity in future. All heating-process designers must have at least a preliminary knowledge of incineration combustion and the problems with practical incinerators.

For the same reasons biogas generation and its combustion is included with other traditional fuels.

Electricity as a "fuel" is used in industries on a large scale and in many forms. All these forms are discussed in detail without going deep into electrical engineering. Electric arc is not covered as it is used in large-scale industries.

Auxilliary techniques related to heating, such as vacuum technology, pyrometry, protective atmosphere, and heat exchangers are discussed in sufficient detail. Refractory, ceramic, and metallic

materials used in the construction of furnaces are dealt with a view to bring about their useful properties and limitations.

A large number of solved problems are included at each stage. They should help the designer in understanding the underlying principles. The appendices are meant mainly for *clearing* some basic concepts which could not be included in the text. This need arises from still continuing usage of diverse units. This book has used SI units throughout.

The presentation of extensive data, about material properties, in tabular form has been avoided. It is felt that selected data given in various tables and figures should be sufficient for the preliminary design. Abundant data in more precise numerical forms are available in almost all handbooks listed in the references. It is also suggested that for problems involving graphical methods used in transient heating, humidity etc., enlarged accurate graphs available elsewhere should be referred for better precision. What are included in text are reasonable outlines limited by resolution in reproduction.

All the design problems involved in the preliminary estimation of heating can be satisfactorily solved by a hand held scientific calculator. If a number of reiterations are called for, they can be worked out on a computer. Many softwares are available for specialized areas in heat transfer but they are (almost) all dedicated to particular situations. The designer is expected to have access to computational facilities.

An interdisciplinary book of this type is never complete. It is quite likely that some aspects of heating are either left out or not sufficiently covered. I will be thankful to receive constructive suggestions about any errors, omissions, and improvements to make the book more useful.

A second volume is in the planning stage. It will open with a discussion on the estimation of the heat transfer coefficient in practical situations followed by some typical construction features. The major part will consist of a number of fully worked-out designs. Any suggestions for inclusions in this volume will be highly appreciated. Your comments may be directly communicated to me at the address given below.

The preface will remain incomplete if I forget to mention my wife Sumitra. She has been my counselor for all these years. The book was a challenging job due to its complexity and my age. Her constant support, encouragement, and help has made this task a pleasure and fulfillment.

Mangesh Limaye has converted my sketches to computer drawings. He has also typed the manuscript. He has done both jobs with great skill and patience.

I also take this opportunity to express my thanks to the staff of Marcel Dekker for the design and organization; and Sam (Samik Roy Chowdhury) and his staff at ITC (Ashish Bhatnagar, Bhavinder Singh, and Subir Saha) for editorial services and production of the book.

**Dr. Yeshvant V. Deshmukh**

---

# About the Author

**Dr. Yeshvant V. Deshmukh** received graduateships in metallurgical and mechanical engineering from the Pune University. Subsequently, he received his doctorate in mechanical and production engineering.

He has over forty years of combined experience in teaching, research, and consultancy in engineering. He has taught undergraduate and graduate classes in metallurgy and mechanical engineering at the Government Polytechnic, Pune and B.V. College of Engineering, Pune where he was a professor and the chairperson of the mechanical engineering department.

His consultancy was mainly in design of furnaces and heating, heat treatment, and other processes.

He is an associate member of the Institution of Engineers (India) and a Fellow of the Institute of the Mechanical Engineers (India). He has written about 10 technical books and contributed extensively to metallurgical and mechanical fields.



---

# Abstract

Heating is an important operation in almost all industrial and domestic processes. A large variety of heating techniques is available at the designer. Some examples are fuel burning, electrical heating, radiative heating, and so on.

There is no book, presently available, which discusses all these diverse heating processes, their principles, choice, design materials, and limitations. This book attempts at providing information about complimentary topics such as vacuum technique, temperature measurement and control, fuels, and protective atmospheres. This makes the book self-contained in all respects.

Heating is an offshoot of the science of “heat transfer” and “fluid mechanics.” This serves as a refresher course for the reader and develop an understanding about heating processes.

Waste incineration and biogas generation are specially included topics. They are discussed in detail and will lead to incinerator design. In coming years, these two topics will assume high importance in environment protection.

A large number of solved problems at each stage will help develop confidence in the designer in application of theory-to-practical situations.

Instead of giving large number of tables and data, the book encourages the use of standard handbooks and development of the designer's personal database. However, sufficient data on properties of materials are presented in both graphical and numerical form.

The book should be useful to manufacturers, designers, sales personnel, and users of heating.

---

# Acknowledgments

I am thankful to the following for their help in preparation of this book.

M.S. Gajendragadkar, Dr. P.K. Roy, S.K. Paknikar,  
R.S. Marathe of the British Library, PUNE, India  
Technical Book Services, PUNE, India

M/s Kanthal AB, Sweden,  
Ircan Inc, U.S.A.

Hauck Manufacturing Co. U.S.A.  
Ecoflam, Italy





# Chapter 1

---

## Introduction

### CONTENTS

1.1 In the Beginning .....	1
1.2 Heating System Classification .....	3
1.3 Classification of Heating Modes.....	7
1.4 Auxilliary Techniques .....	10

### 1.1 IN THE BEGINNING

Fire is perhaps the first natural element that mankind discovered and mastered. Forest fires or volcanoes exhibited this power. It was then used for heating in winter and for cooking. Man was so awed by fire that earlier civilizations deified fire and sun.

In the millions of years that followed, we learned a lot about the production and use of heat. In the last few hundred years the sciences of thermodynamics, heat transmission, heat absorption, and generation were formulated and became

the basis of modern industrial growth. Almost all industrial and domestic processes depend on the generation and use of heat. Electricity generation, production, processing and shaping of metals, manufacture of chemicals, and processing and cooking of food all depend on heat. Heating in winter and cooling in summer has made life comfortable and habitable all over the globe.

In this book we will explore some methods of heat generation, and principles of heat transfer and heat absorption. The choice of heat-generation methods is necessarily limited to small and medium heating processes. Large scale or heavy melting, and extraction and refinement of metals and minerals are excluded.

It is our aim to develop sufficient understanding of the underlying principles of heat generation and transmission by various methods that will lead to the design and estimation of the process to suit the intended application.

Before we launch into the details of processes and mechanisms of heat, it is necessary to bear in mind a few underlying thermodynamic principles common to all processes under investigation.

1. Heat will always flow or be transmitted from a higher to a lower temperature.
2. The “state” of heat in a body or in a given region of a body is completely given by the temperature of that point. We will use the Celsius ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) and the Kelvin ( $\text{K} = ^{\circ}\text{C} + 273$ ) scales throughout.
3. Heat generation, transmission, and absorption are basically “inefficient” processes as some heat is always irrecoverably lost. If we consider  $Q_1$  as the heat-generated energy input to the generator and  $Q_2$  as the energy absorbed by the object, the efficiency of the process will be  $Q_2/Q_1$  which will, in any practical process, rarely exceed 30%.
4. It will not be possible to perform exact heat-flow calculations at all stages of even a simple heating process because of losses that will be incurred at every point.

Hence, heat calculations, in a sense, are “imprecise.” The design philosophy will be to ensure that the required heating takes place in the designated time with minimum possible losses.

5. We will divide a given process into two primary classes, steady state and transient. In the steady state process the temperatures at all points are stationary, i.e., they do not change with time. In a transient process the temperature changes with time.

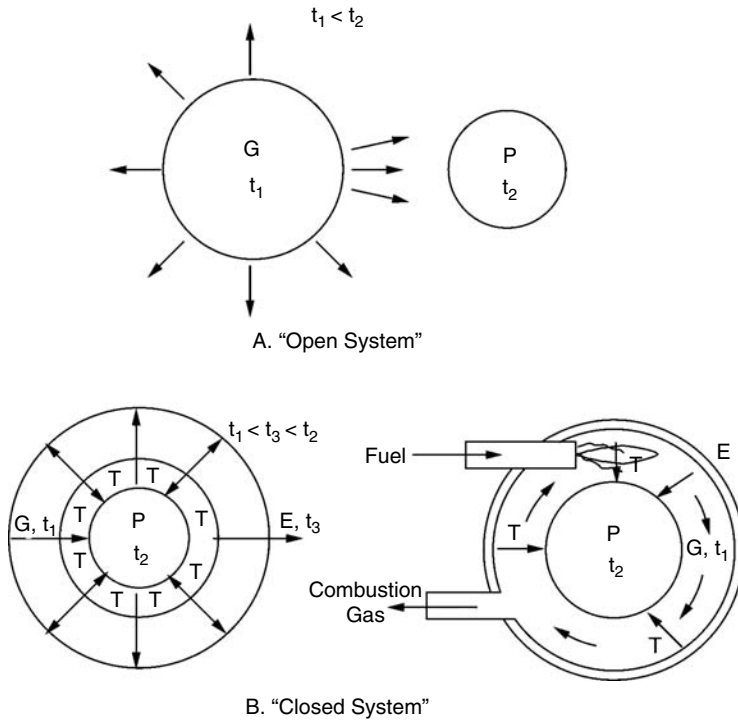
A process will be transient when heating is going on. On reaching the required temperature, it may become steady. Usually we will be interested in only one aspect, either steady or transient.

6. The fraction of generated heat incident on the surface of a body is not totally absorbed. Some is reflected, some transmitted, and only some will be absorbed and will heat the body. Thus, only the last (absorbed) fraction is the “useful” heat. We will discuss these phenomena later in detail. Most of the objects that we are interested in will be opaque and there will be no transmission. However, the medium between the heat generator and the work (air, gases) may also absorb and transmit the heat passing through them.

## 1.2 HEATING SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION

Any heating system will have two main components, the heat generator  $G$  and the work or the object  $P$  that is to be heated. Heat will be transferred from the generator to the object by a heat transfer process  $T$ . Based on these three, a general classification system can be proposed as shown in Figure 1.1.

1. Figure 1.1(A) shows a system that has the generator and the work separated by a distance. Heat is transmitted through the medium in between, as shown by the marked arrows. This is obviously an inefficient system as a considerable portion of the generated heat will be wasted (as shown by the unmarked arrows).

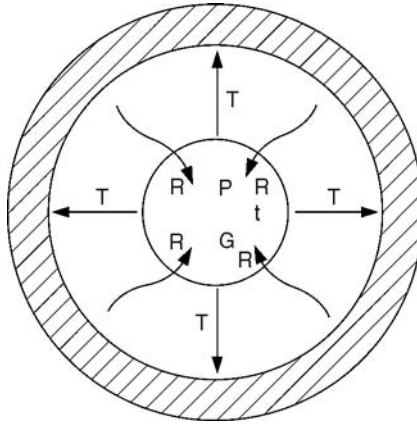


**Figure 1.1** Systems in which the generator  $G$  and the work  $P$  are separate.

A pot or a piece of metal placed on an electric plate or gas burner belongs to this system. We call this an "open" system.

The above system can be converted into a "closed" system as shown. We now surround the generator and the work by providing an "insulated" enclosure  $E$ . Now all the generated heat will reach the work either directly or via reflection from the enclosure. It is presumed that the enclosure is 100% reflecting.

Most of the indirectly heated resistance furnaces (Figure 1.1(B)) belong to this class. Heat transfer from the generator to the enclosure to the work is an important design factor for this type. Fuel-fired furnaces also belong to this class. An important difference in this

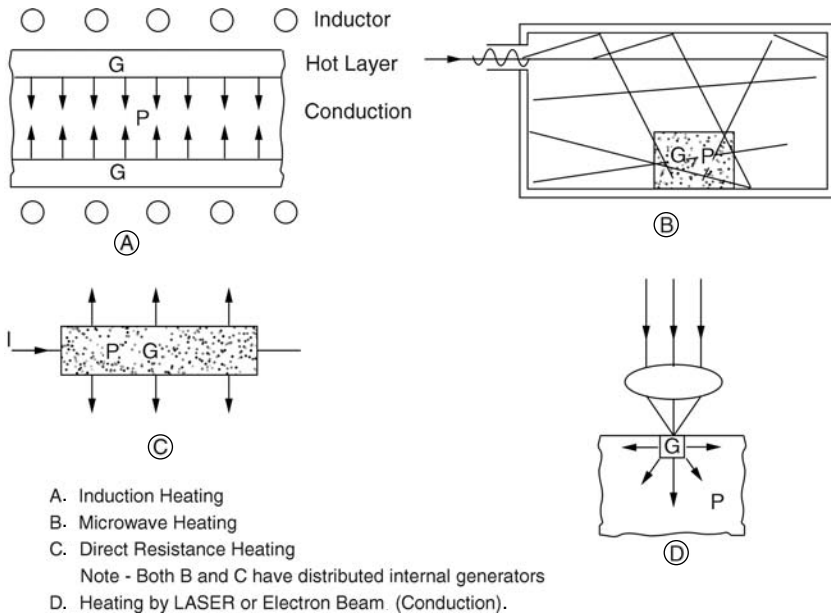


**Figure 1.2** Heating system in which “nonthermal” radiation is used to create heat in the work. Heat generator and work are not separate.

type is the heat lost from combustion gases that leave the furnace enclosure. This heat loss is also quite considerable and reduces efficiency despite the presence of the enclosure.

2. Other types of heating systems do not have separate generator and work. By using certain techniques, heat is directly generated in the work as shown in the Figure 1.2. The heat is created by radiation  $R$  generated in a source  $S$ . An enclosure may or may not be required. Appreciable amount of heat may be lost from the work if it is heated much above the surrounding. These processes are usually very fast and such heat loss can be minimized. It may appear that these systems are highly efficient. However, the generation of radiation in the source  $S$  is very inefficient ( $\sim 5\text{--}10\%$ ) but there are several other advantages which will be discussed later.

Induction heating, direct resistance heating, and microwave heating belong to this class (Figure 1.3). In induction heating, high frequency ( $10^3\text{--}10^5$  Hz) electromagnetic oscillation is created in the work by



**Figure 1.3** Special heating modes.

using an oscillator and an inductor. The work gets heated by the induced eddy current. In microwave heating the work is placed in an electromagnetic field of very high frequency ( $10^{11}$ – $10^{14}$  Hz). The molecules of the work vibrate and create heat. In direct electric resistance or capacitive heating the work is made a component of an electric circuit. The power  $I^2R$  or dielectric losses in it due to current  $I$  produce heat. Later we will discuss all these processes in detail to highlight their individual features.

Heat transfer in all furnaces of this type is directly related to the surfaces of the generator and to the work taking part in the transfer, and the ratio  $F_P/F_G$  becomes a decisive factor in the design.

The heat transfer from the generator to the work takes place over paths through the medium. Thus, the properties of the medium decide the mode and efficiency of transfer. The medium may be air or a special

gas or combustion gases, or vacuum and is called the “atmosphere.” Thus a classification based on atmosphere arises, such as vacuum furnace, protective atmosphere furnace, salt bath furnace and the like.

3. Two modern heating processes that need to be specially mentioned are laser and electron beam heating. To some extent they belong to both systems mentioned above. A laser is a light beam having a single wavelength and excellent collimation. When focused on the work surface, it produces a spot with very high energy density ( $\sim 10^5$ – $10^8$  W/cm<sup>2</sup>) which melts or evaporates the material in the spot. Penetration below the surface is low but deeper penetration is possible (Figure 1.3(D)).

An electron beam is a stream of high-energy electrons which can be focused on the work with similar power density. Heat is produced when the electrons lose their kinetic energy on impact. The penetration is deeper than that with laser beam heating.

Both techniques are useful for precision heating/melting at a spot ( $\sim 0.1$ – $2.0$  mm diameter) that can be easily controlled. They are useful heat sources for cutting, welding, and drilling operations requiring precision. Energywise, they are highly inefficient but offer many other advantages than any other process can. These techniques are now in commercial use and are discussed in detail.

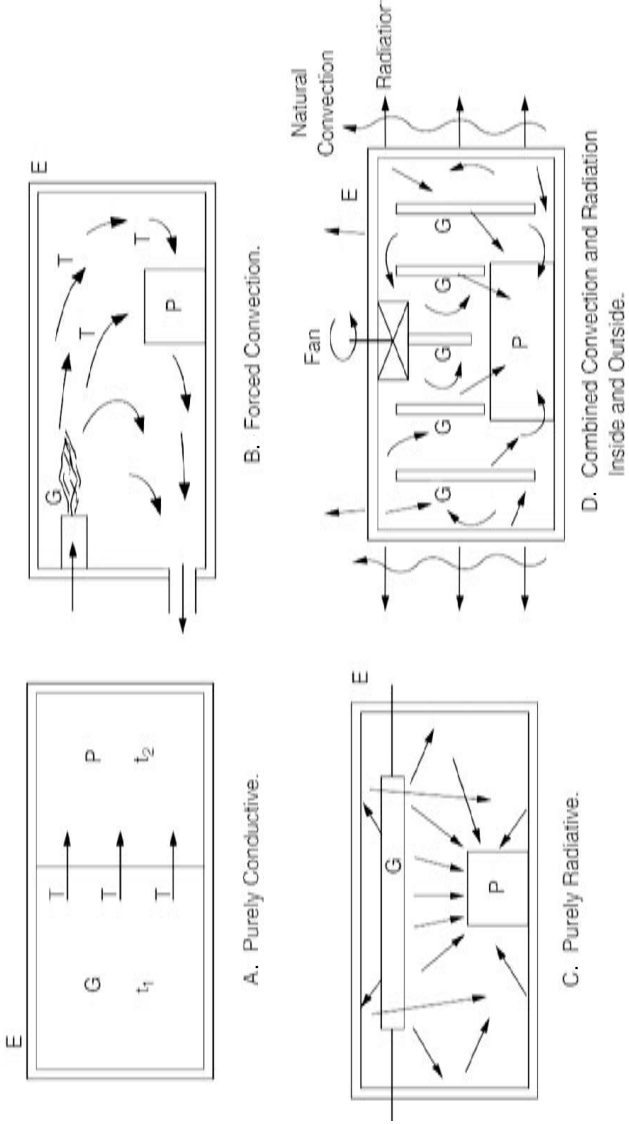
### 1.3 CLASSIFICATION OF HEATING MODES

In the heating systems of the first type, i.e., systems in which the generator and the work are separated and enclosed in an enclosure, the heat transfer process shows multiple modes.

If the heat generator and the work are in good contact, the transfer is only by conduction (see Figure 1.4(A)). The conductivities of the two are the decisive factors. However, such direct contact is possible only in rare cases.

The space between the generator and the work is usually filled with air or some process gas (Figure 1.4(B)). Gases are always in natural circulation due to the buoyancy effect. In some





**Figure 1.4** Heat transfer modes.

cases, the gases may be in forced circulation induced by a fan or pushed by a flame. The gases pick up heat from the generator and pass it to the work during circulation. This then becomes the main transfer mode and is called “convection” (natural or forced). In such cases, fluid dynamic properties such as viscosity, velocity, and flow channel geometry become the deciding factors in heat transfer.

Hot bodies radiate heat in the space around them. Thus a generator at a higher temperature than the work will radiate heat toward the work (Figure 1.4(C)). No physical contact or intervening gas is necessary. In the system under consideration, heat transfer will take place by radiation in addition to convection. If there is no gas in the intervening space (i.e., there is vacuum), radiation will still take place. Thus radiation is the third mode of heat transfer. It takes place alone or accompanies convection.

This discussion shows that ignoring pure conduction as a rare case, heat transfer between the generator and the work will take place by convection and/or radiation. One such furnace is shown in Figure 1.4(D). Note that in addition to internal radiation and convection (assisted by fan) the exterior is also transferring heat to the surrounding by both processes. We will quantify these modes in the next chapter. In case the transfer takes place simultaneously by both convection and radiation, the temperature of the hot body decides which mode will be dominant. Later we will show that radiation is dominant above about 600°C and convection below this temperature.

In high-temperature furnaces heat transfer is mainly by radiation. Low-temperature furnaces are convective furnaces and proper circulation of gases in the enclosure and around the work are their main design features.

In fuel-fired furnaces the flame is the main radiator and the inside enclosure surface is a secondary radiator. Both contribute toward radiant heat transfer to the work. The combustion gases evolving from the flame circulate in the enclosure and contribute to heat transfer by convection. The placement of the burners and the location of the gas exit port, with respect to the work and the enclosure, become important for obtaining maximum heat transfer to the work.

Vacuum furnaces are purely radiative. As the radiation from the generator also strikes the vessel it is necessary to use reflectors and cool the vessel wall with water circulation.

Heat transfer in laser and electron beam heating is mainly by conduction but has some peculiarities. Heat is created at the focal spot on the surface and is conducted to lower layers (Figure 1.3(D)). A considerable amount of incident energy is lost by reflection. The temperature at the spot is very high and some of the surface layer is melted, evaporated, and splashed. This makes the beam go deeper but the bulk transfer is by conduction. Because of high energy density the process is very fast and complete (through) heating requires a fraction of a minute. As intense heat is created on a very small spot, laser and electron beams are known as “concentrated heat sources.”

In direct contact resistance heating, capacitance heating, and microwave heating (Figure 1.3(B) and Figure 1.3(C)), heat is created uniformly throughout the work on an atomic or molecular scale. Hence, transfer phenomena are not significant.

Induction heating heats a relatively thin surface layer (0.5–3.0 mm) (Figure 1.3(A)). The heat is then conducted to the inner layers. Due to concentration of heat generation on the surface and conduction to the interior, induction and laser heating offers a possibility of heating only to the desired depth by controlling the time of radiation.

Note that once the heat flux reaches the surface of the object it is carried inside by conduction only.

## 1.4 AUXILLIARY TECHNIQUES

While discussing convection in Section 1.3, we have seen the importance of proper circulation of gases in the furnace enclosure. The stream of gases may be smooth (laminar) or with eddies or recirculation (turbulent). These two types exhibit different flow patterns when they pass over walls, single or bulk work objects, and ducts. Consequently the heat transfer from such streams is also significantly affected. Gases in furnaces are generally at or near atmospheric pressure. When at

extremely low pressure, such as in vacuum, they exhibit an altogether different behavior.

Many parts of furnaces require water-cooling to keep their temperature low. This is usually achieved by circulating water through these parts. Here our object is to remove the heat. We have to consider heat transfer to the water flowing through the cooling channels. We again come across a type of flow and its effects on heat transfer. This will help us to decide the quantity of cooling water and the pump capacity required.

Considering the importance of gas and water circulation in heating processes we will review the underlying principles of related “fluid dynamics” in a separate chapter.

To protect metal from oxidation at high temperature and to bring about some changes in the composition of surface layers (e.g., carburizing, nitriding, etc.) special protective atmospheres or vacuum are used along with many heating processes. The generation and control of these atmospheres and vacuum are discussed in separate chapters.

The success of a heating process is determined solely by measuring and monitoring the temperature. A wide range of measuring techniques for high temperatures (pyrometry) are available. It is of paramount importance to choose a proper pyrometer for measurement and control of the given process. Pyrometry and temperature control are discussed separately.

Let us begin our discussions with heat transfer processes and proceed to auxiliary techniques. Solved examples at each stage will make the underlying design technique clear.



# References

## 7 7. Refractories

### 7.2 CLASSIFICATION OF REFRACTORIES

Refractories are mainly inorganic oxides or their mixtures.

These oxides, and hence the refractories, are classified into

three classes – acidic, neutral, and basic. This classification is based on their resistance to the slags produced in metal extraction, glass making, cement, and other chemical manufacturing. Acid refractories resist attack from slags predominant

in silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ). Basic refractories resist the attack of slags

containing  $\text{CaO}$  and  $\text{MgO}$ . Neutral refractories are unaffected

either by acid or basic slags. The degree of slag resistance

varies among various oxides. Thus, silica is most acidic

and calcium oxide is most basic. Based on these criteria the

oxides forming refractories are arranged on a ‘‘scale’’ given

below. Fire clays dominant in  $\text{SiO}_2$  are acidic, but as their  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$

content increases they become increasingly neutral. Pure  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$  is completely neutral. Refractories containing

magnesite ( $\text{MgO}$ ) and dolomite ( $\text{CaO}, \text{MgO}$ ) are basic. Other compounds used as refractories such as carbides,

carbon, graphite, zirconia, etc., are considered neutral.

This book excludes all furnaces and reactors that produce

slag. Hence, the above mentioned method of classification

tion is not discussed further. For general use in industrial furnaces fire clay refractories are mostly used in all forms and for parts of furnace structure (walls, roof hearths, doors,

etc.). Other refractories that are occasionally used are pure

alumina, pure silica, and silicon carbide among others. These

refractories are discussed in more detail in the subsequent section.

### 7.2.1 Fire Clay Refractories

These mainly consist of silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) and alumina ( $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ ) in

varying proportions. These two oxides form a continuous sys

tem of phases. These phases are Tridymite – A silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) mineral stable between 870 and 1470 ° C. Crystobalite – A silica mineral stable between 1470 and 1723 ° C.  $\text{SiO}_2$ ,  $\text{TiO}_2$ ,  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ ,  $\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_3$ ,  $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ,  $\text{MgO}$ ,  $\text{CaO}$  Acidic Neutral Basic  $2/2/2/3/2/3/2/3 \leftrightarrow$  Mullite – A silica-alumina mineral ( $\text{Al}_6\text{Si}_2\text{O}_{13}$ ) having a

melting point 1850 ° C and stable at all temperatures. Fire clays also contain impurities and bonding agents in small amounts. These are classified according to their duty such as Super duty – Containing more than 45%  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$  and pyrometric cone equivalent (PCE) greater than 33. They have good resistance to thermal shock and good mechanical strength. High duty – They have alumina content similar to super duty but a lower PCE (31-33). Medium duty – They have a still lower PCE (29-31). Low duty – They have a PCE of 15-28. Thus, it can be seen that as the duty becomes less severe,

the PCE value, i.e., the refractoriness, strength, and abrasion

resistance, along with the cost, also lowers. For general purpose medium-size furnaces, medium- or

high-duty fire clay is adequate for temperatures up to 1550

° C.

For higher temperatures up to 1700 ° C, super-duty fire clay is

the best. Low-duty fire clays can be used up to 1400 ° C but have low

strength and low thermal shock resistance. They are best used

as backing layer for higher grades. Almost all the above grades are also available as insulating

bricks. These have similar thermal properties but due to a high

porosity, they have low thermal conductivity and low strength. Fire clay refractories containing more than 72% silica are

known as "semisilica bricks." These can be used up to 1450 ° C.

They have good dimensional stability.

#### 7.2.2 High Alumina Refractories

These refractories contain 48-99% alumina and are classified

according to alumina content. They consist of mullite ( $Al_6 SiO_{13}$ )

and corundum (natural  $Al_2 O_3$ ) along with bauxite and clays.

Their impurity content is lowered to improve refractoriness. High alumina bricks have a high density, PCE value

higher than fire clays, good mechanical strength and creep

resistance, and can be used up to 1850 ° C. Their cost increases with increasing alumina content.

These refractories find use in melting furnaces, incinerators,

cement kilns and the like. In industrial heating where temper



atures are as high as 1500-1800 ° C, high alumina refractories

are the only choice. They have good electrical resistance at high tempera

tures and are gas-tight (low porosity) and hence, are used for

heating element supports, insulators and muffles for laborato

ries, and light duty high temperature industrial furnaces (e.g.,

semiconductor processing). Other varieties of high alumina refractories are alumina

chrome and alumina-carbon refractories. Phosphate bonded

alumina bricks are used for aluminium melting furnaces.

### 7.2.3 Silica Refractories

These types of refractories contain 94-98% silica and very low

amounts of FeO and Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>. They have TiO<sub>2</sub> and CaO up to

1.5-2.5%. Silica bricks have good resistance to acid slags and have

good mechanical strength as well. If not processed properly,

they show a permanent volume expansion up to 15% and have

low thermal conductivity. They are useful up to 1700 ° C and are mainly used for

glass-melting furnaces. Vitrified or fused silica is another variety containing

>98% silica. They are produced from fused quartz. They have

volume stability only up to about 1100 ° C. This type is resis

tant to most chemicals (except strong alkalies) and is

widely

used for laboratory ware, furnace tubes, etc. It can be polished

to obtain good, glass-like transparency.

#### 7.2.4 Carbon and Graphite Refractories

These contain 98% or more carbon in various crystal forms

blended with pitch, resins, and petroleum derivatives. Carbon is easily oxidized in atmospheres containing

oxygen or oxidizing gases such as CO. Hence, these refractories can be used where there is no direct access to oxygen.

Such conditions exist in a vacuum or in inert atmosphere furnaces and also at places where carbon is covered by metal or

slag (e.g., blast furnace bottom). Carbon blocks prepared by blending and pressing can

be easily machined to intricate shapes such as tubes and

nozzles. Currently carbon is also produced in fiber form which can

be further processed to obtain tapes, cloths, blankets, and so on. Carbon can be used (with above restrictions) for temperatures up to 2000 ° C. It has good electrical conductivity and

high resistance to slags, chemicals, and gases. It has been used for electrical resistance heating elements. Graphite bonded with clays and tar or pitch is used to

manufacture foundry crucibles.

manufacture foundry crucibles.

manufacture foundry crucibles.

#### 7.2.5 Silicon Carbide (SiC) and Carborundum

This is a major special refractory and is made by fusing silica

and coke at 2000 ° C. It is available in various purity

grades. Silicon carbide is extremely inert and difficult to bond. It

is bonded with clay or silicon nitride. It is used in electrical heating elements (up to 1550 ° C) for

furnace parts (up to 1800-2000 ° C). It has good spalling resistance

and is very hard and strong. Compared to other refractories, it has very high thermal conductivity.

#### 7.2.6 Zircon Refractories

These are zirconium silicates containing 67% ZrO<sub>2</sub> and 33%

SiO<sub>2</sub> together with binders, etc. These are difficult to shape,

have good resistance to acid slags, and good thermal shock resistance.

#### 7.2.7 Zirconia Refractories

These are made from pure zirconium oxide (ZrO<sub>2</sub>), which has

a very high melting point (2680 ° C) but shows dimensional

changes at high temperature. By certain stabilizing tech

niques, it is possible to control sudden dimensional changes

and cracking. It is very costly and does not find wide use in

general furnaces.

### 7.3 INSULATING REFRACTORIES AND MATERIALS

During its operation a furnace develops a high temperature on

its inner side which is called the hot face. The outside, i.e., cold

face temperature, is the atmospheric temperature. Hence,

there is a considerable temperature difference between the

hot and cold face under which heat flows out. This heat is totally wasted but unavoidable. However, this loss can be reduced by using a material with low thermal conductivity for furnace construction. Such low thermal conductivity materials are known as "insulating materials." Many insulating materials have an upper useful temperature beyond which they cannot be used. They are also mechanically weak and cannot be loaded. This limits their direct use in furnaces. Materials of this class are cork, asbestos, glass fiber, and wood. Fire clay materials (alumino-silicates) can be processed to give a low thermal conductivity. This is achieved by creating voids or pores in them. These pores reduce the density and make the bricks lightweight. Porous fire clay bricks are good insulators and are reasonably strong up to about 1000 ° C. Hence, they are more suitable than the materials discussed in the previous paragraph. Porous fire clays are not as strong as dense bricks and hence cannot be used for the hot face. These bricks are easily machinable. Ceramic and mineral fiber materials in various forms constitute the third category of insulating materials. Their conductivity, density, and specific heat is low. Ceramic fibers can be used

for both hot and cold faces; rock and mineral wool can be used at

700 ° C maximum. These materials have no mechanical strength.

They are also very costly. Hence, there is no one insulating material which will sat

isfy all requirements. We take advantage of the fact that the

temperature difference between the hot and the cold face is in

the form of a gradient. Hence, a wall or roof can be constructed

from a number of layers of different materials suitable for the

temperature range of that layer. This is called a composite

wall. The thickness of layers can be adjusted to give the most

economic and effective loss reduction. Various commonly used insulating materials and their

important properties are given in Table 7.1. The design

aspects are discussed elsewhere.

#### 7.4 MANUFACTURE OF REFRACTORIES

##### 7.4.1 Raw Materials

Besides a few exceptions, the raw materials for manufacturing refractories are natural minerals and clays. These are

T

TABLE 7.1 Properties of Some Common Insulating Materials

Material Density kg/m<sup>3</sup> Maximum Temperature ° C Thermal Conductivity W/m ° C Specific Heat kJ/kg ° C

Light weight

fireclay

65-80% SiO<sub>2</sub> 450-800 950 0.15-0.25 0.835

Light weight

fireclay

35-50%

Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> 500-1000 1100-1250 0.45-0.55 0.837

Ceramic fiber

blanket

40-50%

Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, SiO<sub>2</sub> 64-130 900-1400 0.17-0.25 1.03

Ceramic fiber

blanket

95% Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> 50-90 1600 0.09-0.21 1.07

Rockwool 150-200 750 0.033-0.037 @ 150-200 kg/m<sup>3</sup> 0.418 -  
0.852

Asbestos 150-fiber 600-800 board 550 0.13-0.15 0.837

Glasswool 150-200 300-450 0.037-0.040 0.66

Glass fiber

(mat) 12.0-80 350-450 0.035-0.040 0.66

Mica 2900 500-550 0.52-0.60 0.837

quartzite, quartz (SiO<sub>2</sub>), kaolin (AlSiO<sub>4</sub>), dolomite  
CaMg(CO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,

calcium carbonate CaCO<sub>3</sub>, magnesite MgCO<sub>3</sub>, sillimanite

AlSiO<sub>4</sub>, alusite Al<sub>2</sub>SiO<sub>5</sub>, chrome ore (Fe, MgCrAl)<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>,  
Zircon

sand ZrSiO<sub>4</sub>, graphite, and many others. The mined raw  
materials contain many impurities. See

water is an important source of magnesium. Pure alumina ( $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ ), silicon carbide ( $\text{SiC}$ ), corundum

( $\text{Al}$

$\text{O}_3$ ), and mullite ( $\text{Al}_6\text{Si}_2\text{O}_{13}$ ) are some of the raw materials

which are prepared synthetically at great expense. Some

refractories are made from carbon or contain carbon products,

which are by-products of coke and oil production processes. Besides the gross chemical compositions cited above, the

actual mineral crystals that go into the formation of a raw material are also very important. For the same chemical composition, the crystal structures can be quite different and will

show different properties. During the manufacturing (firing stage) and when used in a furnace, the original crystal structures

may change. This will result in abrupt expansion or change in other properties such as mechanical strength.

Hence, it is necessary to find out the actual crystal structure

of the constituents. Identification of the crystal structures and their bonding

with other minerals constitute the separate science of mineralogy. There are vast numbers of mineral classes. The same is

the case for different clays. Broadly speaking, the manufacturing process of almost

all refractories follow the same sequence. There are minor differences

ferences which are not discussed here. All the mined raw materials are crushed, ground, and

separated according to the lump or grain size. Either before or

after the size reduction, it may be necessary to wash the mineral

to reduce impurities, gangue minerals, and extraneous

matter. Next, a very important stage is to mix the ground constituents

to obtain a proper blend of chemical composition, mineralogical

content, and desired grain size distribution. It is the variation

in blending that decides the future properties of the refractories.

The mix is again ground and homogenized in

mixers. It is at this stage that binders, such as clays, are also

added to the mix. The required amount of water is also added

at this stage. There are many methods of manufacturing standard

refractory shapes. The most common method is the forming of

the shape in a mold under high pressure ( ~ 200 N/mm<sup>2</sup> ). Complicated shapes which are difficult to press are

shaped by slip casting. A slurry of raw material mix and water

is poured in a plaster mold. Water is absorbed by the mold and

a shape (semi-dry) is produced. A few years ago the process of isostatic compaction was

brought from the laboratory to the production floor. The raw

material is filled in elastic rubber bags having the required



shape. The bags are deaired and sealed. They are then charged

into a pressure vessel and subjected to enormous hydrostatic pressure. The material is compressed from all sides. This results in a dense precision product. The process can also be

carried out at high temperatures. Isostatically pressed shapes

are far superior than the press formed ones. However, the process is costly and is used for special refractories only.

In the next stage, the green, lightly bonded shapes are carefully dried in large kilns. Drying produces steam which can damage the product by cracking or breaking. Removal of water also produces shrinkage, i.e., substantial change in dimensions. Hence, utmost care is necessary at this stage. The

product is now strong enough for handling. Final strength and shape is produced in the next stage of

firing or sintering. Here the shapes are stacked on flat cars

and passed through a tunnel kiln. The cars pass at a predetermined speed and are subjected to a definite cycle of pre

heating, firing (heating) at 1200-1800 ° C, and cooling. At this

temperature the various constituent minerals react and produce a strong bond and some shrinkage. The actual thermal cycle used depends on the phases (crystal structures) of the constituents and their interrelationship (phase diagram).

Many types of furnaces are used depending on the thermal cycle and the volume of production. The shapes are then measured for dimensional accuracy.

Their crystallographic structure is also checked along with the outer appearance. The shapes are then cleared for dispatch. The shapes so produced are very hard and cannot be machined. Special refractory shapes are sometimes ground to produce a dimensional accuracy of 1.0 mm. It is again pointed out that what is described above is only a broad outline of the manufacturing process. Individual refractories may require slightly varying procedures.

#### 7.5 REFRACTORY SHAPES

There are many standard and nonstandard shapes of refractories. It is always economical to use the standard sizes (as far as possible) in furnace construction as they are readily available. The basic shape available all over the world is the standard 9" brick which has the dimensions 9" × 4 " × 2 " (or 230 × 115 × 65 mm) and has a volume of 101.25 cu. in. (~1660 mm<sup>3</sup>). Besides the standard brick, other standard shapes are small, straight, soap, key, jamb, tile, end skew, side skew, arch, split, circle brick, featheredge, neck, etc. Some of these shapes are shown in Figure 7.1. It is necessary to consult manufacturers' literature to check the standard shapes offered. The

circle brick is a sector of a circle of given diameter and is available

in many sizes. Similarly, the arch brick is used to build

the furnace roof or arch of a given span and again a range of

spans is offered. Shapes are ordered by numbers or volume. Usually a 9"

brick equivalent is used for this purpose. The standard 9"

brick has a volume 101.25 in. <sup>3</sup> The volumes of other shapes

are determined in units of 101.25 in. <sup>3</sup> The nonstandard shapes available are special or modified

standard shapes. Burner blocks (quarls) and corner pieces are

some examples of this type. It is necessary to consult the manufacturer

for these shapes. If he has already made the shape,

the mold is ready and the cost will be less than a specially

manufactured shape. Along with the shapes, the manufacturer also supplies stan-

dard anchors or hooks with which the refractory walls are built. 1212 Figure 7.1 Some typical refractory shapes. Almost all the refractory types (compositions) are available

in standard shapes. Many refractories such as pure oxides ( $Al_2O_3$ ,  $SiO_2$ ,  $ZrO_2$ ),

and aluminosilicates (mullite, kyanite) are produced in tube

form. Both rectangular and circular tubes (up to 150 × 150 mm

or 150 mm diameter) are made. These are used for laboratory

furnaces, pyrometer sheaths, etc. Other shapes available are rods, tiles, small crucibles, etc. All these shapes are manufactured by pressing or extrusion.

#### 7.6 UNSHAPED REFRACTORY PRODUCTS

These products contain the same raw materials plus minor additions of plasticizing, bonding, and other surface active chemicals and minerals. These materials are offered in various formulations such as gunning and ramming mix, castables, mortars, cements, monolithics, and mastics. They are used for lining repairs, brick laying, hearth construction and so on. Almost all types of refractories are available in these forms. They can be used for hot or cold repairs. It is nec-

essary to follow the manufacturers' instructions for their suc-

cessful use. Castable mixes can be used to cast an uncommon shape at the site. Some formulations are heat-setting and some require careful curing or drying. These formulations are

mainly used in process furnaces such as steel convertors, and

cement kilns. For the furnaces discussed in this book, unshaped prod-

ucts are mainly useful for hearth-making and crack-sealing. An interesting unshaped refractory form is paints or

washes. These are based on zircon ( $ZrSiO_4$ ) and alumina or fire clay. They can be applied on refractories or metal sur-

faces. They improve the heat transfer characteristic of the lining by improving emissivity at high temperatures (up to or more than 1500°C). The lining life also increases on the use of paints and washes. They are applied by spraying or brushing.

### 7.7 REFRACTORY FIBERS

We have seen in previous sections that refractories are available

in shaped and unshaped forms. A third type of refractory form is fibers or filaments. From

these we can get both shaped and unshaped products. The

fiber form of refractories is a result of developments over the

last twenty-five years. The general outline of fiber manufacture is as follows: A synthetic or mixed composition of the refractory is

melted at a high temperature. The melt is then poured in the

form of a stream. Air is blown into the stream so that it breaks

the stream into fibers which solidify. By carefully adjusting

the melting temperature, the speed of stream, and the velocity

of air, the fiber length and diameter are controlled. The fibers so produced have lengths of about 200 mm and

diameters 2-4  $\mu\text{m}$ . By using textile manufacturing techniques, the fibers are

converted into cloth and blankets of various thicknesses and

lengths. By the addition of resins and other bonding materials

the fibers are converted to rigid boards and paper. Spinning

the fibers produces ropes and felts. Along with these shapes the fibers are also formulated

into unshaped forms such as mortars, moldable mix, wet

wraps, and cements. Unprocessed loose fiber is also offered as a packing

material for insulation. Presently, the following materials are

available in fiber and fiber-made forms: All fire clay compositions, alumino silicates such as mul

ite and kyanite, corundum, pure silica, and zircon. Besides regular refractories, fiber materials made from glass,

rock fiber, and slag are also available. This list is continuously

growing due to new formulations and processes. The fiber

form offers many distinct advantages over regular pressed

solid forms. A few main points to be noted are: 1. For the same chemical composition the fibers have extremely low thermal conductivities. This is due to low density inherent to the porosity and voids. 2. Low density also gives low specific heat, hence, heat storage is also very low. 3. Very good thermal shock resistance as there is no expansion. 4. Good chemical, steam, and water resistance. 5. Can be easily cut into required shapes and quickly installed. No curing required. 6. Intricate shapes can be produced by molding or vacuum forming. 7. They can also be used for hot face. 8. They are resilient and make good acoustic barriers. 9. Due to their light weight, fiber boards make for much stronger and lighter roofs than parches. Compared to these advantages a major disadvantage

is that the mechanical strength, hardness, and abrasion

resistance is poor. Hence, they can only be used in places

having no mechanical load such as wall faces and roofs. If

there is both mechanical load and elevated temperature, the

structure is built with appropriate solid forms (bricks) and faced with fiber forms. Furnace hearths usually take the load from charge. Hence, fibers are not suitable for making hearths. A short summary of the important properties of fiber

products is given in Table 7.2. Detailed information about the properties and applications is best obtained from the manufacturers as there are some differences among various proprietary products.

#### 7.8 PROPERTIES OF REFRACTORIES

The performance of a refractory in service depends on many factors. These factors are related to certain measurable properties.

Similarly, the refractory construction is carried out at room temperature and is used for service at a higher temperature. Hence, the properties at both room and high temperature are required to be known and matched. These properties also

serve as a guide for quality control in manufacturing. TABLE 7.2 Properties of Ceramic Fiber and Rock Wool Type Ceramic fiber Rock wool Form Bulk fiber Blanket Board Bulk fiber Blanket Board Density kg/m<sup>3</sup> 380-100 delivered 50-250 installed 64-128 Standard 96-128 High duty 250-300 150 150 50-200 Maximum Temperature °C 1260-1400 1260-1400 1260-1600 700-750 700-750 700-750 Thermal Conductivity W/m °C 0.1400.1330.1260.1200.0790.03-0.050.04-0.060.04-0.1 Application Expansion Joints, Sealing Molding Lining Insulation Hot, face lining Insul

## ation Insulation Acoustic and Thermal Insulation Acoustic and Thermal Insulation Acoustic and Thermal

7.8.1 Room Temperature Properties

1. Chemical composition – The major constituents and their contents in a refractory decide its class, i.e., acidic, basic, high alumina fire clay, etc. Minor constituents such as alkali oxides, carbonates, iron oxide, titanium oxide, etc., decide the chemical performance. The chemical analysis also indicates whether the raw materials chosen are correct and the mixture is homogenous.
2. Minerological constituents – These are determined by microscopic and X-ray techniques and provide information about the constituent minerals, their crystal structure, and phases. These decide the performance in firing as well as in service at high temperature.
3. Bulk density and porosity – Bulk density and porosity provide information about the heat storage capacity and porosity indicates the correctness of pressing and drying. Density is quoted in kg/m<sup>3</sup> and porosity is expressed in percentage. Porosity also indicates the insulation capacity (thermal conductivity). Highly porous refractories are good thermal insulators.
4. Abrasion resistance – Refractories are subject to rough handling during manufacture and also to abrasion with process materials (furnace charge, slags) and dust-laden gases at high temperature. Abrasion resistance determines the resistance to such erosion. It is determined by abrading the refractory on a standard surface (e.g., silicon carbide) when loaded under a standard weight.
5. Cold crushing strength – A refractory sample is loaded at a standard increasing rate and the load at the breaking point is noted. This breaking load divided by the area under load gives the cold crushing strength. This test gives a good indication about load bearing capacity, handling, and shipping capacity and also provides information about the strength of the bond obtained after firing.

7.8.2 High Temperature Properties

1. Refractoriness – This is the maximum temperature which a refractory withstands before undergoing permanent change of shape. Refractories do not have welldefined melting temperatures. They start softening rather than melting in a certain temperature range. Refractoriness is determined by a pyrometric cone test. A number of standard pyrometric cones having different softening points and a similar cone of the test refractory are heated in a furnace under standard conditions. At the softening temperature the test cone and a matching standard cone buckle or collapse. The number of this cone (ASTM standard) is reported as the refractoriness



of the test piece, called the "pyrometric cone equivalent" (PCE) number. In practice, the actual maximum temperature of service is about 100-200°C less than that indicated by the PCE number.

2. Dimensional stability –All refractories show a permanent change in dimensions at the firing stage of manufacture. These changes are very slow at the end, and hence, remain incomplete. When fired in a furnace in service, the lining is heated to a high temperature for a long time. This tends to complete the remaining dimensional change. These changes, though small and slow, have to be considered in lining design. The test report indicates changes in linear dimensions on heating for a standard time and required test temperature. The dimensional change may be expansion or shrinkage depending upon the type and temperature. Apart from the permanent dimensional changes, the refractories undergo the usual linear expansion and contraction on heating and cooling. These dimensional changes are very important in lining design. They are required to be compensated for by designing proper expansion joints. Sudden changes in temperature will produce thermal shocks. If not taken care of by expansion joints and cushions, the lining will be subjected to high internal stress leading to cracking or collapsing. Most of the refractories in fired condition show a fairly linear relation for expansion (contraction) and temperature. Silica bricks are an exception to this. They show a high expansion rate of up to about 800°C and then subside to a very slow linear rate. Unfired refractories such as cements, gunning, ramming mixes and castables show drastic dimensional change due to both permanent and reversible expansion.

3. Thermal expansion and creep under load – All refractories are subjected to some load at high temperatures. For the furnaces considered in this book, the bottom will carry the load of the charge as well as self weight. The walls will be loaded mostly with self weight and will be under compression. If the roof is made of unsuspended brick arch, it will be quite heavy. Thus different parts of the furnace lining will be under different loading conditions. They will show a permanent change of dimension with time, i.e., creep. This permanent change (usually subsistence) is determined by loading a sample at standard ( $75 \times 10^4 \text{ kg/m}^2$ ) load at increasing temperature and time. The phases present, density, porosity, and bonding between particles determine the creep properties.

4. Thermal conductivity – Due to the difference between the inside and outside temperatures, all refractories conduct considerable heat to their surroundings. This heat is unavoidable wastage. The conductivity is reported in  $\text{W/m}^\circ\text{C}$ . It changes (usually increases) with increasing temperature and the values of

the temperature coefficient of conductivity are also available. Insulating refractories are highly porous and have low thermal conductivity. The thickness of the lining, usually consisting of an inner layer of dense refractory and outer layer(s) of insulating refractory, is determined by the permissible heat loss and conductivity. For some applications such as recuperators and regenerators, a high thermal conductivity is desirable. 5. Thermal spalling -Some refractories, especially those undergoing thermal cyclic load and gas or slag attack, lose their exposed surface layers. This is known as spalling. Spalling can be reduced by proper choice and lining design. 6. Specific heat - A lining absorbs and retains a considerable amount of heat in service. The retention of heat depends on the specific heat and density, i.e., thermal mass. Thus, for quick heating and cooling we require a lining with low specific heat and density. Insulating refractories have a low thermal mass due to the large number of air pores that give low density. There are many other properties of refractories that are

occasionally useful in special designs. Selected properties of some refractories relevant to the

furnaces and considered in this book are given in Table 7.3,

Figure 7.2, and Figure 7.3.

#### 7.9 SELECTION OF REFRACTORIES

We have reviewed the main types of refractories and their

important design and service properties in previous sections. The choice of refractories chosen from the available mate

rials basically requires matching the properties with the

requirements determined at the design stage. Each design

will have its peculiar demands and will need an individual

choice. Most of the time there is no single refractory that is

suitable. We then have to choose different refractories for dif

ferent parts or make the best compromised selection. The fol

lowing guidelines will be helpful.

#### 7.9.1 Thermal Requirements

These are established by following data: 1. Type of furnace – such as horizontal muffle, car bottom or belt oven 2. Temperature – maximum temperature, rate of heating and cooling, temperature at different zones

T

A

B

L

E

7

. 3

P

r o

p e

r t

i e

s

o f

G

e n

e r

a l

P

u

r p

o s  
e  
R  
e f  
r a  
c t  
o r  
i e

s C l a s s M a i n c o n s t i t u e n t s D e n s i t y k  
g / m 3 R e f r a c t o r i n e s s ° C S o f t e n i n g t  
e m p e r a t u r e u n d e r l o a d ° C C o l d c o m p e  
n s a t i o n s t r e n g t h M N / m 2 S p e c i f i c h e  
a t k J / k g ° C S i l i c a 9 6 - 9 7 % S i O 2 A l 2 O 3  
< 0 . 5 - 1 . 0 % 1 8 0 0 - 1 9 0 0 1 7 0 0 - 1 7 5 0 1 6 0  
0 - 1 7 0 0 3 0 - 3 5 0 . 7 3 - 1 . 2 S e m i S i l i c a 8  
8 - 9 0 % S i O 2 8 . 0 - 9 . 0 % A l 2 O 3 1 7 0 0 1 7 1 0  
1 6 0 0 - 1 7 0 0 3 0 - 3 5 0 . 8 - 1 . 4 F i r e C l a y 6  
0 - 6 2 % S i O 2 3 0 - 3 2 % A l 2 O 3 1 9 0 0 1 7 0 0 1 4  
5 0 - 1 5 5 0 3 0 - 3 5 0 . 8 - 1 . 2 H i g h d u t y 3 6 -  
3 8 % S i O 2 5 4 - 5 6 % A l 2 O 3 2 4 0 0 1 7 8 0 1 5 5 0  
- 1 6 4 0 2 5 - 3 2 0 . 9 - 1 . 2 M u l l i t e 2 0 - 2 2 %  
S i O 2 7 0 - 7 3 % A l 2 O 3 2 2 0 0 1 8 5 0 1 6 0 0 - 1 7  
0 0 6 5 - 7 0 0 . 6 5 - 0 . 7 5 H i g h A l u m i n a > 8 5  
% A l 2 O 3 2 6 0 0 - 2 9 0 0 1 8 0 0 - 2 0 0 0 1 5 7 0 - 1  
9 2 0 6 5 - 7 3 0 . 8 - 1 . 2 M a g n e s i t e 8 5 - 9 0 %  
M g O 2 7 0 0 - 2 8 0 0 > 1 7 5 0 1 4 5 0 - 1 5 5 0 3 0 - 3  
2 0 . 9 - 1 . 2 C h r o m e M a g n e s i t e 6 3 - 7 5 % M  
g O 6 - 1 0 % C r 2 0 3 3 0 0 0 > 1 7 0 0 1 3 5 0 - 1 5 0 0  
3 0 - 5 0 0 . 8 - 1 . 2 Z i r c o n 3 0 - 3 5 % S i O 2 5 5  
- 6 6 % Z r 2 0 3 3 3 0 0 2 5 8 0 1 8 2 0 - 1 8 7 0 9 8 - 1  
9 6 0 . 6 - 0 . 8 Z i r c o n i a 8 0 - 9 8 % Z r O 2 3 - 4  
% C a O / M g O 4 0 0 0 - 4 5 0 0 2 4 8 0 2 2 0 0 1 4 - 4 0  
0 . 5 - 0 . 7 S i l i c o n C a r b i d e 9 3 - 5 0 % S i C  
2 6 0 0 2 0 0 0 - 2 2 0 0 2 0 0 0 4 0 - 7 5 0 . 8 - 1 . 1 4  
- 3 0 % S i O 2 C a r b o n G r a p h i t e > 9 8 % C 1 3 5  
0 - 1 6 0 0 2 0 0 0 2 0 0 0 - 0 . 8 - 2 . 0 3 . S i z e a n d  
s h a p e o f f u r n a c e - h e a t i n g a r e a h e i g h t , c y l i n d r i c a l , o r  
r e c t a n g u l a r 4 . T e m p e r a t u r e g r a d i e n t a c r o s s t h e w a l l s a n d  
g e n e r a l p e r m i t t e d h e a t l o s s e s t o a t m o s p h e r e 5 . O p e r a t i o n  
c y c l e - c o n t i n u o u s , o r b a t c h t y p e 6 . H e a t s t o r e d i n t h e  
w a l l s a n d s t r u c t u r e ( t h i s i s v e r y i m p o r t a n t f o r b a t c h t y p e ,

cyclic operation)

Figure 7.2 Thermal conductivity of selected refractories.  
7. Total heat input, type of fuel, impact of flame on the walls, placement of electrical heaters 8. Load exerted by charge – single charge, small charge in containers, large heavy charge distribution of charge weight on hearth

Figure 7.3 Expansion of common refractories temperature. Properties of refractories related to above requirements are: 1. Refractoriness and refractoriness under load 2. Dimensional stability—expansions and volume changes 3. Thermal conductivity, specific heat, and density 4. Creep and thermal shock resistance

#### 7.9.2 Mechanical and Chemical Requirements

These are indicated by following design data: 1. Type of charge, expected and permissible oxidation, scale produced, type and quantity 2. Combustion products—gases, temperature and composition, ash and its composition 3. Methods of charging and discharging, mode of charging through door, roof, and bottom 4. Furnace construction and load on the walls, roof, hearth, at atmospheric and service temperatures, thermal cycles 5. Flue dust, rate of flow of flue gases 6. Heating, direct or indirect Related properties are 1. Chemical composition and physical shape of charge 2. Cold and hot compressive strength 3. Surface texture of refractory – smooth, rough, medium 4. Size tolerances offered 5. Gas permeability 6. Resistance to slags, hot ash, dust For most of the furnaces discussed in this book, fire

clay refractories (of suitable grade) and ceramic fiber

shapes are quite suitable for the design of hot face walls,

roofs, and hearths. These are complemented with matching

unshaped products such as cements, castables, coatings, etc.

There will be a few exceptions which will be pointed out at

that stage. Insulating materials that are commonly used are ceramic,

slag, rock, wool or loose fiber, asbestos, glass fiber, and insulat

ing fire clay bricks.



## 8.8. Metals and Alloys for High Temperature Applications

These data, though useful as a guide for estimation, cannot be

directly used in design. This is because the actual combination

of stress and environment in practice is quite different than

that used in the laboratory. It is safer to use data supplied by

the manufacturer or conduct your own (short-time) tests. Oxidation resistance of some commonly used metals and

some alloys based on them is given with the maximum useful temperature in Table 8.1.

### 8.3.1 Corrosion by Other Gases

There are some instances when metals come in contact with gases other than air at high temperatures. Carburizing and nitriding operations are carried out in alloy muffles and contain

ers. The atmosphere inside the muffle consists of a mixture of

gases containing  $\text{CO}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}_2$ , and trace hydrocarbons

like  $\text{CH}_4$ . In such an atmosphere ordinary muffle alloys absorb car

bon, which leads to the formation of carbides, especially chro

mium carbide ( $\text{Cr}_3\text{C}_2$ ). The carbides so formed migrate toward

grain boundaries and weaken the metal. Similar reactions

take place in ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) leading to the formation of

nitride gases containing sulfur in the form of SO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>S

which will react with metals, forming sulphide scale.  
Sulphide

scale formation leads to flaking and spalling. Nickel does not form carbide and nitride while iron and

chromium easily react with both, forming stable carbide and

nitride. Hence, alloys for resisting carbon and nitrogen penetra

tion contain large amounts of nickel and little or no iron. Nickel is prone to sulphide formation. Alloys to resist sul

fur attack contain high chromium and 1.0-2.0% aluminum. The above discussion shows that there is no one alloy

which will resist the attack of all harmful gases and a proper

choice must be made to get satisfactory service life. Note that

in many applications, the part (muffle) has to resist hot gases

from flame, oxygen attack from the outside, and process gas

from the inside. The metal choice then becomes quite critical.

T

#### TABLE 8.1 Oxidation Resistance of Some Commonly Used Metals

No. Metal Nature of Oxide Oxidation (Heat) Resistance in Air

1 Mg Loose oxide Very poor (150-200 ° C)

2 Ta, Mo, W, Nb, Zr, Ti Thick, loose oxide spalling Poor (500 ° C)

3 Cu, Fe, Ni, Co Thick with defects spalling Fair (400-500 ° C)



4 Al, Sn, Cr, Be, Mn Dense, adherant oxide film Good (400 ° C)

5 Ag, Au, Pt No oxidation Excellent but uneconomical.  
Only special or laboratory use ( > 1000 ° C)

#### 8.4 MELTING POINT AND PHYSICAL STABILITY

All metals have a melting temperature. Alloys have a melting temperature range. Melting restricts the maximum temperature to which a metal can be exposed in any form or environment. Later, we will see that the strength of metals decreases with increasing temperature. Near its melting point, the metal shows practically no strength and starts to exhibit a vis

cous flow. Hence, the actual temperature to which a metal can

be used as an engineering component is much less than the melting temperature. There are other complicating factors such as stress and environment, which restrict the maximum useful service temperature. It is therefore not possible to quote any rule. It is observed though, that many metals and alloys can be safely used up to about  $0.3-0.4 \times T_m$  where  $T_m$  is

the melting temperature ( ° C). Alloying and other strengthen

ing techniques have extended the useful temperature much above the iron-chromium-aluminum alloy (Kanthal), which

has a melting temperature (  $T_m$  ) 1500 ° C and maximum service

temperature (  $T_s$  ) 1300-1400 ° C. Approximate melting temperatures of some metals and

alloys are given in Table 8.2.

T

## TABLE 8.2 Melting Temperature of Metals and Alloys

Temperature

Range ° C Metal Melting Temperature ( ° C)

3300-4500 Graphite (Sublimes ~ 4200), Tungsten (3370)

2750-300 Tantalum (2870), Rhenium (3180)

2200-2750 Columbium (2415), Molybdenum (2620), Boron (2300)

1650-2200 Platinum (1750), Rhodium (1865), Titanium (1795),  
Chromium (1650), Zirconium (1850), Vanadium (1710)

1100-1650 Manganese (1260), Cobalt (1845), Nickel (1450),  
Iron (1540), Nickel alloys (1460), Stainless Steel  
(Austenitic 1450), Beryllium (1285), Steels (1450)

700-1100 Copper (1085), Brass, Bronze (1040), Silver (960),  
Other Bronzes (1000), Aluminum Bronze (1085)

200-700 Aluminum and alloys (650), Magnesium alloys (600),  
Zinc (420) The table shows that there is a very little  
choice of metals

for use above 1600 ° C. Only refractory metals and graphite  
are

available but they all require a special atmosphere or  
vacuum.

There are no metals available above about 2200 ° C. The  
choice for

temperatures up to 1400 ° C is very wide, especially in the  
range

of 600-1000 ° C. All commonly used metals are in this range.

## 8.5 LINEAR EXPANSION

All materials show linear expansion when heated. This arises  
due to increasing lattice or molecular vibration. This expansion  
or dilation is reversible, i.e., increased dimension

is recov

ered when original temperature is restored. Typical linear expansion coefficients for metals and alloys

of interest to us are given in Table 8.3. Note that the values

given are for comparison only. Actual values will depend on

composition and pretreatment. The coefficient has no units as

it is measured in the same units, e.g., (m/m length  $\times 10^{-6}$ ).

TABLE 8.3 Mean Coefficient of Linear Expansion for Selected Metals Metal/Alloy Temperature range °C  
Coefficient of linear expansion  $\times 10^{-6}$  /°C  
Inconel 600 20-1000 16.7  
Inconel 601 20-1000 17.8  
Incoloy DS 20-1000 18.7  
Aluminum 20-600 28.7  
Graphite 20-600 3.5  
Molybdenum 20-2100 7.2  
Platinum 20-1000 10.2  
Tantalum 20-2200 7.8  
Tungsten 20-2400 5.8  
Carbon and 20-600 13.5  
low alloy Steel Austenitic S.S. 20-600 15.5  
Ferritic S.S 20-750 11.2  
Cast Iron 20-400 12-18  
Spheroidal Graphite and Alloy In the design of furnace parts or components, this expansion, though small, must be taken into account and accommodated for. If restricted, considerable internal stresses are set up and give rise to bending, buckling, and distortion. Many high temperature applications involve fabrication by welding. The location of the weld joint and room for expansion are very important for long life. Linear expansion should not be confused with creep. The latter arises due to plastic flow under stress and is irrecoverable.

tion, though small, must be taken into account and accommo

dated for. If restricted, considerable internal stresses are set

up and give rise to bending, buckling, and distortion. Many

high temperature applications involve fabrication by welding.

The location of the weld joint and room for expansion are very

important for long life. Linear expansion should not be confused with creep. The

latter arises due to plastic flow under stress and is irrecoverable.

## 8.6 CAST IRONS

There are many types of cast irons. They are generally classi

fied according to the shape of the graphite and the structure

of the matrix. There is also a class of alloy cast irons which

contains nickel, chromium, silicon, or molybdenum. Cast irons are cheap compared to special heat resistant

alloys but their use in heating applications is limited due to

low tensile strength and difficulties in fabrication. In a sense, they are brittle in tension but can take large compressive loads (150-300 N/mm<sup>2</sup>) depending on type. Fabrication is possible only by casting, machining, and welding. Hence, they are suitable only for heavy sections under

compression. Ordinary flake graphite cast irons can be used up to

about 400°C, beyond which they show extensive dimensional growth and flaking. "Growth" of cast irons is different from

thermal expansion and creep. Nodular cast irons contain graphite in nodular form and

have a pearlitic or ferritic matrix. They have limited tensile

strength and are called "ductile irons." These irons are suitable

for service up to about 500°C and show little growth and

flaking. Alloy cast irons (nodular) have been used up to 800°C.

They contain nickel, silicon, and molybdenum. Chromium cast irons (C.I.) have good oxidation resistance. The properties of

selected C.I.s are given in Table 8.4.

T

A

B

L

E

8

. 4

C

a s

t

I r

o n

s

f o

r

H

i g

h

T

e m

p e

r a

t u

r e

S  
er  
vi

ce Form mechanical and other properties refer to handbooks. (Source Metals Handbook, Vol. 1, ASM 8th Ed., 1961) No Type Composition Maximum service Temperature °C C Si Mn Ni Cr Cu / M  
0 1 Ordinary flake graphite 3.4 - 3.8  
1.8 - 2.8 0.5 - 0.8 - - - 450 - 500 2 Ordinary nodular graphite 3.2 - 4.1 1.8 - 2.8  
0.5 0.8 - - - 500 3 Medium silicon flake graphite 1.6 - 2.5 4.0 - 6.0 0.4 0.8  
- - - 900 4 High chromium flake graphite 1.8 - 3.0 0.5 - 2.5 0.3 - 1.5 5.0 15 - 35  
1 1 0 0 5 High nickel flake graphite 1.8 - 3.0 1.0 - 2.7 5.0 4.0 - 1.5 14.0 - 30.0  
1.75 - 5.5 7.0 / 1.0 8 1 6 6 Ni Cr S: flake graphite 1.8 - 2.6 5.0 - 6.0 0.4 - 1.0  
13 - 32 1.8 - 5.5 10 / 1.0 9 5 0 7 Aluminum flake graphite 1.3 - 1.7 1.3 - 6.0 18 - 25  
Al 1 1 1 0 0 8 High Si Nodular 2.8 - 3.8 2.5 - 6.0 0.2 - 0.6 1.5 - - 900 9 2 0 % Ni Nodular 2.9  
1.75 - 3.2 0.8 - 1.5 18 - 22 1.7 52.5 0 - 7 0 0 1 0 3 0 % Ni Nodular 3.0 2.0 3.0 1.8 2.4 2 1 - 2 4 0.5 0 - 6 0 0

#### 8.7 STEELS AT HIGH TEMPERATURE

Plain carbon steels containing 0.2-0.4% carbon and small amounts of silicon and manganese are ferritic or pearlitic. They are cheap, weldable, and available in all forms. They oxidize above 400-500°C and are suitable for low or medium (elevated) temperature parts such as structural frames, supports, panels, etc. Painting improves corrosion resistance. Low alloy steels containing 0.15% carbon and 1.2% molybdenum or chromium show slightly better properties and can be used for parts requiring intermittent service at

temper

atures up to 500-600°C. Chromium steels containing up to 20-24% Cr have good

oxidation resistance but will show spalling under thermal

cycling. They can be used up to 800°C. Austenitic stainless steels are resistant to corrosion by

oils, fumes, moisture, and many gases up to 450°C. They

retain their surface shine and cleanliness up to 450°C after

which the surface may tarnish or blacken, but corrosion resis

tance is good up to 650-800°C. High alloy steels contain large

amounts of chromium and nickel along with small amounts of

Mo, Nb, Ti, Al, etc. They can be used up to 1150°C. Table 8.5 shows the properties of selected heat resistant

steels. Reference should be made to handbooks as the num

ber of commercially available heat resistant steel is very

large.

#### 8.8 SELECTION OF METALS FOR HIGH TEMPERATURE APPLICATION

We have seen in previous sections that at high temperatures,

metals will fail by excessive stress or by reaction with their

environment. Hence, these two cases become the deciding

factors in the choice of metals. The following general remarks will help to make a pre

liminary choice. Note that there can be exceptions due to some

combinations of temperature, stress, and environmental

attack.

T

A

B

L

E

B

. 5

C

o n

s t

i t

u

t i

o n

a

n

d

H

i g

h

T

e m

p e

r a

t u



r e

P

r o

p e

r t

i e

s

o f

S

e l

e c

t e

d

P

l a

i n

C

a r

b o

n

a

n

d

A

l l

o y

S

t e

e l

s Type Main Constituents % Tensile S  
t rength N/mm<sup>2</sup> (MPa), °C Stress for 1  
. 0% elongation in 10,000 h MPa/@ °C  
t rength for rupture in 10,000 h MPa/@ °C  
C Oxidation temperature °C and Appl  
i cations C Cr Ni Mo / V 25200400600 Pl  
a i n carbon 0.2 - - - 4504633710xidat  
i on > 400 °C Furnace structure Plain  
c arbon 0.4 - - - 602630460dodododo0  
x idation > 400 °C Furnace structure  
L ow alloy 0.15 1.2 - 2.0 - 0.6 - 1.0 510  
5105002930xidation > 550 °C Cr stee  
l 0.06 20 - - 541400432216 - - - Oxida  
t ion > 600 °C Refractory supports Au  
s tenitics S.S 0.11 88 - 121 - 2 Mo / Ti 63  
0 - 4323780xidation at 850 °C Resist  
a nt to organic corrosion High alloy  
0.12 512656 - 5564320xidation at 10  
00 °C. Muffles, belts, pots and bask  
e ts. (All steels in annealed or norm  
a lized condition.) 1364003950019  
240054500216450855303044501055  
308560039700116600547006965048  
70093650627001. Aluminum is the cheapest  
choice if the temperature does not exceed 300°C. It is  
quite resistant to oxidation and attack by CO<sub>2</sub> and  
moisture, and finds application in ovens, dryers etc. 2.  
Ordinary (plain carbon) steels have adequate strength up to  
400-500°C, but do not possess a high oxidation resistance.  
They are cheap and easy to fabricate in a variety of forms  
such as rods, strips, and wires, and structurals. Ordinary  
or nodular cast irons are sometimes better than steels in  
oxidation. They have two limitations. They cannot be  
formed; and the cast section is thicker and heavier than  
steels. Oxidation and dimensional instability is the second  
limitation. Inability to take tensile loads limit their use  
to compressive stress. 3. Low alloy steels containing 1-3%  
chromium and small amounts of molybdenum and vanadium can  
be used up to 600-700°C. They can be easily fabricated and  
have better oxidation resistance than plain carbon steels  
or cast irons. They should be used in normalized or  
annealed conditions. 4. Low corrosion resistance of steel

at high temperature can be improved by plating or impregnation. Chromium plating is frequently used. It helps to reduce oxidation and improves reflectivity. Impregnation of the surface with an oxide layer improves resistance to oxidation and attack by molten salts and carburizing chemicals. 5. In some applications, steel parts can be cooled by water or air circulation. This keeps their temperature at an acceptable level. 6. Metallurgically, the metal to be used should have a single phase (e.g., ferrite and austenite) and a large grain size. Generally, alloys hardened by heat treatment are not suitable because a prolonged high temperature breaks the hardening phase such as with martensite. The exception is dispersion-strengthened alloys. 7. For design purposes, short time tensile test data (e.g., Figure 8.3) and combined creep-rupture data (e.g., Figure 8.2(C)) are useful. Such data are available in handbooks or manufacturers' publications. Before making use of such data it is necessary to make an estimate of the desired "life" of the part and expected stresses. 8. In design and fabrication keep in mind the linear expansion. Some useful hints are: • Avoid sharp corners or edges. • There should be no welds at corners or edges. • Corrugated sheets are better than flat ones. • Use the same section throughout. • Allow free expansion at the ends to prevent bending, buckling, distortion, or sagging. • Baskets, fixtures, trays, etc. used in heat treatment undergo repeated heating and cooling under a stressed condition. The effects of expansion and thermal fatigue are more severe in such cases. 9. Next in cost to plain and low alloy steels are the various stainless steels (S.S.). There are two main types of S.S. that are suitable for our purpose. Ferritic S.S. – These contain 8-25% chromium and about 0.15% carbon. The chromium forms an oxide layer and protects from oxidation and furnace gases. Ferritic steels are used up to 600°C. The chromium oxide layer breaks off after repeated heating and cooling. Austenitic S.S. – These contain 18-25% chromium and 8-20% nickel with about 0.08-0.1% carbon. These steels can be used up to 700°C without appreciable oxidation. However, they are not suitable for sulfur bearing gases. Austenitic stainless steels have excellent resistance to oxidation up to about 400°C and are not affected by gases and substances associated with food processing. Hence, they find major applications in ovens for baking, etc. 10. Nickel and nickel chromium alloys dominate the temperature range from 600 to 1100°C and are the costliest. They offer several advantages if properly fabricated and used and thereby prove economical. There are many alloys based on Ni and Cr. They contain small amounts of aluminum, titanium, molybdenum, and balance iron. Most

of these alloys are proprietary and are recommended for individual situations. The alloys are available in all forms such as rod, plate, sheet, wire, and tube. They can be easily welded. They have austenitic, single-phase structure. Some of the alloys can be hardened by dispersion or solution strengthening. Some alloys offer excellent resistance to process gases and molten salts. The properties of some nickel alloys frequently used in high temperature furnaces are given in Table 8.6. There are many other heat-resistant alloys used in machinery such as boilers, turbines, jet and automotive engines, etc. These are not considered here. 11. Beyond about 1200°C, the only metals available are refractory metals – tungsten, molybdenum, and tantalum. They are very costly compared to nickel alloys. Their availability is limited to simple shapes such as sheets, rods, and wires. They oxidize easily beyond about 600°C and have to be protected by special gases, or inert gases, or vacuum. At temperatures beyond 1200°C they have low strength. The maximum useful temperature when properly protected are tungsten-2560°C, molybdenum-1900°C, and tantalum-2400°C. Their main use is in radiation shields, resistors, furnace tubes, boats, crucibles, etc. For processing high purity metals as in semiconductor manufacture, platinum or platinum alloys are used up to 1600-1700°C. They are extremely costly but can be used in air and are easy to fabricate. 12. Metals have high specific heat and conductivity. Heat absorbed or conducted away represents thermal loss. Hence, the amount of metal fittings and furniture in the heating zone should be the minimum required.

T

A

B

L

E

8

. 6

S

e l

e c

t e  
d  
N  
i c  
k e  
l  
B  
a s  
e  
A  
l l  
o y  
s ,  
P  
r o  
p e  
r t  
i e  
s ,  
a  
n  
d  
A  
p p  
l i

c a

t i

o n

s C o m p o s i t i o n

T

e n

s i

l e

S

t r

e n

g t

h N / m m 2 E l o n g a t i o n % A l l o y N i C r F e C S  
i A l P o i n t ° C 2 0 ° C 7 0 0 ° C 1 0 0 0 ° C 2 0 ° C 7  
0 0 ° C 1 0 0 0 ° C A p p l i c a t i o n s I n c o n e l 6  
0 0 7 2 1 4 - 1 7 8 - 1 0 0 . 1 5 0 . 5 - 1 3 7 0 - 1 4 2 5  
6 2 0 3 6 5 7 5 5 0 5 1 6 1 G o o d o x i d a t i o n r e s  
i s t a n c e u p t o 1 1 5 0 ° C . H e a t t r e a t m e n t  
f u r n a c e s , s a l t b a t h s , r o l l e r s , b e  
l t s . I n c o n e l 6 0 1 5 8 - 6 3 2 1 - 2 4 8 0 . 1 0 .  
5 1 . 0 - 1 3 0 0 - 1 3 7 0 7 5 0 3 6 0 5 0 5 2 5 3 - O x i  
d a t i o n r e s i s t a n c e u p t o 1 2 5 0 ° C i n c l  
u d i n g s u l f u r g a s e s . B o x e s , b a s k e t s  
, m u f f l e s . I n c o l o y 8 0 0 H 3 0 - 3 5 1 9 - 2 3  
B 0 . 0 5 - 0 . 1 - 0 . 1 5 0 . 6 1 3 5 5 - 1 3 8 5 5 2 0 3  
0 0 - 5 5 7 0 - R e s i s t a n t t o o x i d a t i o n , s  
u l f u r , a n d c a r b u r i z i n g . F i x t u r e s ,  
s h e a t h s , c o n v e y o r b e l t s . I n c o l o y D  
S 3 4 - 4 1 1 7 - 1 9 B 0 . 0 8 0 . 1 5 1 . 9 2 . 6 - 1 3 3  
0 - 1 4 0 0 6 2 0 3 3 5 6 5 3 8 4 9 7 5 M u f f l e s , f u  
r n a c e p a r t s , r o l l e r s , c h a i n s , f a n s  
, f i x t u r e s . N i m o n i c 7 5 B 1 8 - 2 1 5 0 . 0 8  
0 . 1 5 1 . 0 0 . 2 T i 1 3 4 0 - 1 3 8 0 8 5 0 4 2 0 8 0 3  
0 5 7 5 0 M u f f l e s , f u r n a c e p a r t s , r o l l  
e r s , c h a i n s , f a n s , f i x t u r e s . ( C o u r  
t e s y - H e n r y W i g g i n & C o . L t d . U . K ) M e  
l t i n g S u m m i n g u p , t h e c h o i c e o f m e t a l s a n d a l l o y s

should be

made by considering the temperature, type of service (continuous or intermittent), expected life, oxidation, and possible

corrosion, the most important criteria being the cost. In many

cases the choice is a compromise. Metals and alloys used for resistance heating elements

are discussed in chapter 9.

# 11 11. Concentrated Heat Sources

## 11.1 LASER

### 11.1.1 Introduction

The term laser is derived from ‘‘light amplification by stimulated

emission of radiation.’’ Broadly speaking, it is an ordered beam of

monochromatic light. The theoretical possibility of such a beam

was described by A. Einstein (~ 1917) and the first working laser

was produced by T. Maiman in 1960. This first device was based on

a doped ruby single crystal and had a very low power (mW). In subsequent years, rapid developments in technology

and worldwide research led to the development of a wide variety of laser generators with beam powers from a few watts to

several kilowatts. Lasers were soon realized as potential concentrated energy

(CE) devices that can be commercially used for material process

ing. A focused beam of laser radiation can develop extremely

high energy (heat) concentration ( $\sim 10^4 - 10^8 \text{ W/cm}^2$ ) on a small

area ( $\sim 10^{-2} \text{ cm}^2$ ) on the work surface. A large number of applica

tion areas were discovered to which new ideas are being con

stantly added. The use of laser as a ‘‘tool’’ is being exploited for

processing all types of materials. Because of its delicacy and pre



cision, it is also increasingly used in surgical operations. Besides the above-mentioned application areas laser is

being used in communication, surveying, printing metrology, analytical chemistry, holography, and several other fields.

However, these applications are based on properties such as monochromaticity, coherence, and low divergence, and are

beyond the scope of this book. A very large number of atoms and molecules display las

ing (i.e., emission of monochromatic, stimulated, and coherent

radiation) when properly excited. Consequently a variety of

commercial lasers are available. They are broadly classified as

solid state lasers, molecular lasers, semiconductor lasers, exci

mer lasers, gas lasers, dye lasers, and so on. In this book we are interested in so-called "power lasers"

which can be used for heating, i.e., having a power output of

the order of  $10^4 - 10^8$  w/cm<sup>2</sup> for sufficient time. Presently, only two lasers are found to be suitable for such

power applications. One is a solid state laser called Nd-YAG

laser, which can give an output up to 1.0 kW. The other is a gas

(molecular) laser based on CO<sub>2</sub> and is called the CO<sub>2</sub> laser. It is

the most powerful laser presently available and can give an out

put up to 20 kW. For very small power requirements the ruby

laser is used, which has an output of a few mW.

### 11.1.2 Generation of Laser Beam

The physics of the generation of laser beams by atoms and molecules

is a very complex phenomena and a specialized branch of physics. In this book we are concerned only about the properties

and application of laser beams for material processing

(heating). The details of atomic and molecular processes leading

to laser generation (lasing) are not important for these applications. What follows is a general and simplified account.

For theoretical detail treatment, consult specialized literature

energy levels or bands which are associated with a definite energy  $E$ . When the atom is unexcited, lowest energy levels are

occupied. The amount of electrons that can occupy a given level

is fixed and decided by the laws of quantum mechanics. It is expected that the reader is familiar with the basic atomic theory. Atoms can be excited by the application of high voltage,

high temperature, and many other techniques. On excitation

the electrons acquire higher energy and jump to an appropriate

higher energy level. On removal of excitation the excited electrons in the

higher level go back to their original lower level position. In

doing so they get rid of the excess energy by emitting

photons

or light and other radiation. If the energy in the higher level is  $E_2$  (electron volts) and

that in the lower level is  $E_1$  the frequency  $\nu$  (and wavelength  $\lambda$ )

of the emitted radiation is given by the well-known relation: (11.1) where  $C$  is the velocity of light ( $\sim 3 \times 10^{10}$  cm/sec). In laser parlance the process of excitation of electrons to

a higher level is called "pumping." The return journey from a

higher level to a lower one is called "decay." The decay may

take place in one step from  $E_2$  to  $E_1$  or a number of steps (such

as

$E_2 \rightarrow E' \rightarrow E'' \dots E_1$ ) of successively lower energy. According to the quantum theory the energy levels are

discrete (definite) for a given atom/molecule. Hence, for satis

fying the equation all the three variables  $E_1$ ,  $E_2$ , and  $\nu$  must be

compatible for radiation emission. In the intermediate steps of

decay, if there is no compatibility, that decay is emissionless. For lesser generation, the lasing medium is selected so

that it has a three- or four-level decay in which one intermedi

ate state satisfies the conditions of the equation. Besides the selected decay levels discussed above, the

excitation and decay occurs at many levels and the resulting

general light emission is called "fluorescence." Consider a substance having a four-level electronic struc

ture with energy increasing from level 1 to 4 (Figure 11.2). In

an unexcited state, level 1 is fully occupied by electrons. On

excitation the electrons in level 1 will be pumped to level 4

creating vacancies in (the otherwise full) level 1. This is called

“population inversion.” On removal of excitation the electrons in level 4 will

decay to level 3. This decay is emissionless. A further transi

tion is from level 3 to 2 where the decrease in energy satisfies

Equation (11.1) and a radiation of frequency  $\nu$  will be emitted.

The electron will then decay to level 1 without emission and

thus return back to its original position. The photons (radiation) emitted during the transition from

level 3 to 2 will stimulate other electrons (undergoing the same

3

→ 2 transition) to emit radiation of the same frequency  $\nu$ .  $n_1 = - = E E h C 2 1$  Figure 11.2 Laser emission by stimulation amplification. This emission is not only of the same frequency ( $\nu$ ) but is

also in the same direction and in phase with the original emission.

This process is called “stimulation” and is the beginning

of the laser beam formation. Continued excitation (pumping) reinforces the beam,

increasing its intensity. A laser cavity is made by enclosing the lasing substance in the space between two mirrors (Figure 11.3) at two ends. One mirror is fully reflecting and the other is partially transmitting. The mirrors are perfectly parallel to each other. When the radiation beam of stimulated radiation strikes the fully reflecting mirror it is reflected, i.e., turned back toward the cavity. On its journey to the second mirror it stimulates more electrons to transition  $3 \rightarrow 2$  and emits radiation of the same frequency, same direction, and same phase. The beam intensity thus increases further. This is called "cavity gain." On striking the semitransparent mirror, some radiation leaves the cavity as a coherent laser beam. The remaining radiation is reflected back and continues to travel to the fully reflecting mirror with increasing intensity. The beam thus keeps traveling between the two mirrors and builds a resonance due to the particular distance ( $L$ ) between the mirrors. This is a simplified account of laser generation. The pumping action in some solid state generators is achieved by using high energy photons emitted by a powerful flash light (see ruby and Nd-YAG lasers in the next sections). In gas lasers the pumping is achieved by high voltage discharge. Other radiation not compatible with the stimulated radiation escapes the cavity, and adds to the cavity loss. Note that the input energy in a laser is that which is sup

plied to the pumping source.

### 11.1.3 Noteworthy Points about Lasers

Laser is a clean source of energy. There are no combustion gases. It is a beam of photons having no mass and charge.

They do not exert any pressure on the work. **Figure 11.3 Building up of laser beam by stimulation and cavity resonance.** Laser is unaffected by air or any gas surrounding the

work. It is affected only by plasma (ionized gas). Heating by

laser does not require a closed surrounding like a furnace.

Being a beam of light (mostly infrared), radiation can be transmitted over considerable distances by using a pipe (wave

guide) and mirrors. Low power beams can be transmitted by

using a relatively flexible optical cable. Hence, the laser source

(generator) and the work can be separated. By using a microscope and related optics the beam can be

located precisely on the spot which is to be heated. A coordi

nated controlled work stage in combination with a microscope

will enable the spot to be successively located at different sites

on the work surface. The focused spot has a radius of a fraction

of a millimeter which enables heating of a very small spot

( $\sim 0.01 \text{ mm}^2$ ). Heating is thus confined to a very small area.

This makes the following operations possible: 1. Welding of fine wires to each other (e.g., thermocouple junctions) or

to integrated circuits or components. 2. Drilling (piercing or burning) of very small (10-500  $\mu$ m) diameter holes. The heating time is very short ( $\sim$  msec). It depends on the

work size and the pulse duration. This short time span restricts

the heat affected zone (HAZ), hence, there are no internal ther

mal stresses. The power density ( $w/cm^2$ ) of a laser beam is very high ( $10^4 - 10^8$

$w/cm^2$ ), hence, a very high power is concentrated on a very small

area. At these power levels virtually any known material (metals,

ceramics, glass, or polymers) can be melted or vaporized. This is

achieved by controlling the beam power and the duration of heating. Light particles (photons) do not have any electric charge.

Their interaction with the work atoms or molecules of the

work does not involve the completion of an electric circuit (in

contrast to electron beams). Similarly, the heating does not

involve setting up an internal electromagnetic field as in

induction or dielectric heating. The heat evolution is purely by

the impact of photons with the free electrons and atoms or

molecules of the work. It is because of this reason that a laser

beam heats any material. This property makes lasers useful for processing any

material or any combination of materials (e.g., dissimilar metal

joining, ceramic cutting, drilling, etc.) Cutting,

drilling, or similar operations are carried out by a light beam used as a tool, and material removal is by precise melting and evaporation. In conventional machining, material removal is achieved by the impact of a hard tool on the work, i.e., by shearing off the material, piece by piece. The friction involves considerable unwanted heating. Usually we have to use a cutting fluid to reduce the friction and remove the heat. Laser machining does not require any coolant. Heating rates achieved by a laser beam are very high and the spot is precisely located where required. Machining is there fore very fast and precise. There is very little swarf. The cut edge or welded joint is smooth and clean. Generally no post heating (machining) operations are required. Laser machining does not require costly fixtures. The only facility required is a good programmable coordinate table with the required degrees of freedom. A programmable coordinate table makes it easy to change the work-piece or the site. Laser operation is quiet and no gases are evolved, hence it is eco-friendly. The laser beam and its profile can be precisely controlled and manipulated by techniques such as Q switching, pumping control, filters, lenses, TEM control, etc. More than one laser generator (of the same wavelength and type) can be optically coupled to obtain higher power



levels.

#### 11.1.4 Limitations of Lasers

Laser heating is not a bulk heating process like furnace heat

ing. The heat production is limited to a very small spot. Hence,

laser processing is restricted to very small areas. Thus, laser

is useful for micro-machining or micro-heating. Due to the peculiar nature of the spot and work mate

rial interaction laser beams cannot penetrate deep (like a drill). The depth of penetration is usually restricted to a few mm. To keep the laser beam focused on the work surface it is

usually necessary to isolate the work table from the beam

generator. Laser optical components like mirrors and lenses do dete

riorate with time. They are costly to repair or replace. Laser

maintenance can be costly and is a specialized job. Holes drilled by laser have a tapered shape. This taper is

more pronounced for deep holes. Similarly, the hole edge of the

top surface has a splashed edge due to melt flushing. Laser radiation (especially focused) is damaging to the

eyes and skin. Proper precautions, as recommended by the

manufacturer, must be observed.

#### LASERS FOR MATERIAL PROCESSING

##### 11.1.5 CO<sub>2</sub> Laser

This is a molecular gas laser and is the most powerful laser

presently available. The lasing medium is CO<sub>2</sub> gas in which lasing occurs due

to changes in vibrational energy levels of CO<sub>2</sub> molecules. The

lasing wavelength is in far infrared at 10.6 mm. The lasing

medium consists of a mixture of CO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>, and He in the pro

portion 2:2:3. Addition of N<sub>2</sub> and He helps lasing of CO<sub>2</sub> and

gives higher output and efficiency. Addition of He also helps to

remove heat as it has a better conductivity. The pumping is achieved by a high voltage 1-3 kV and

high frequency (1-3 kHz) DC discharge. The construction of a typical CO<sub>2</sub> laser is shown in Figure

11.4. This is a fast, axial flow-type generator. There are trans

verse flow designs which can give higher power outputs. The lasing action occurs in a glass tube resonator. The

tube has a fully reflecting mirror at one end and a partially

transmitting window at the other end. Both the window and

the mirror have a large radius and concave shape. The tube

has a row of alternate positive and negative electrodes con

nected to a high voltage pulsing DC supply and controller. The gas mixture gets considerably heated during lasing.

Some CO<sub>2</sub> is decomposed to CO and O<sub>2</sub>. To remove the heat  
F i g u r e 1 1 . 4 C O <sub>2</sub> l a s e r .

and the contaminants the gas is drawn off and cooled by a

recirculating arrangement shown in Figure 11.4. Fresh gas is

added when required. The axial gas flow rate is about 300

m/sec.

The flow is maintained by a roots blower. The pressure inside

the tube is less than the atmospheric pressure. The output of CO<sub>2</sub> lasers increases with tube length and

gas pressure. There is a limit to the tube length. Lasers con

taining several tubes in parallel are constructed to give a tube

length of several meters; however, they are cumbersome to

construct and keep in alignment. Lasers having a transverse

flow are now available, giving an output of more than 20 J. The

gas pressure in a transversely excited atmospheric (TEA) pres

sure type CO<sub>2</sub> laser is nearly atmospheric ( $\sim 10^5$  Pa). The dis

charge pulse frequency is 10-100 kHz. Commercial CO<sub>2</sub> lasers have an output of up to 20 kW

with a maximum efficiency of 20 kW. CO<sub>2</sub> lasers have a wavelength of 10.6  $\mu$  m with consider

able line width. As these wavelengths are in the far infrared

region almost all the optical materials normally used, such as

quartz and glass, are unsuitable. The mirror, window, and all

other optical components in the beam manipulation system

are made of materials such as KCl, NaCl, Ga, As, Ge, Zn, Se.

These are costly materials. Mirrors are of the gold-surfaced

metallic type with water cooling. The optical components dete

riorate and require replacement or resurfacing. Low power (3-100 W) CO<sub>2</sub> lasers have a sealed tube, i.e.,

no gas recirculation. These are not very useful as a heat source. Fast axial and transverse flow CO<sub>2</sub> lasers are the main

types used today as power lasers in material processing. They

are generally used in continuous mode but can be pulsed in the

1-10 ms range. The beam of CO<sub>2</sub> lasers can give various TEM

modes though the fundamental (TEM<sub>00</sub>) mode is more common.

CO

<sub>2</sub> lasers can be Q switched. The output can be controlled to produce a step or ramp pattern. The gas tube (resonator) may have external cooling. High power CO<sub>2</sub> lasers used for machining have a gas

assist system to supply a reactive (air, oxygen) or inert (argon,

helium) gas flow on the work surface at the hot spot. There are other gas lasers based on CO, N<sub>2</sub>, NO<sub>2</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>O, etc.

The CO<sub>2</sub> laser dominates the fields.

#### 11.1.6 Nd-YAG Lasers

This is a solid state laser based on garnet (a mineral) doped with

the rare earth element neodymium (Nd). The garnet used has a formula Y<sub>3</sub>Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>12</sub> and is called yttrium-aluminum garnet, a syn

thetically grown single crystal having a diameter of 3.5-16 mm

and a length of 45-250 mm. About 1-1.5% Nd is uniformly dispersed in it (doping) while the crystal is grown. The ends of the

rods are highly polished and made exactly parallel. The pumping medium used is intense white light produced

by xenon flash lights or fluorescent discharge tubes. The

output of these "pumps" can be controlled by varying the input

energy and supply frequency. The flash tube and the laser rod (medium) are enclosed in

an internally reflecting container. There are various designs.

The design shown in Figure 11.5 uses an elliptically shaped enclosure with the flash tube and the laser rod situated at the

foci. This improves the pickup of the pumping light. The enclosure

may be air- or water-cooled. The pulse width and frequency is controlled by an external

power and frequency source for the flash light. Recent versions of

Nd-YAG laser use solid state diodes in place of flash lights. Similar Typical Properties of Commercial CO<sub>2</sub> Laser Wavelength 10.6 μm with several lines Transverse modes Multimode. TEM<sub>00</sub> (Gaussian) is commonly used Output power (continuous) 1-10 kW commonly available Pulsed output 10<sup>-3</sup> -10<sup>-2</sup> J Gas pressure 10<sup>-4</sup> -10<sup>-5</sup> Pa Gas consumption 0.2-2.0 m<sup>3</sup> /h Flow Fast axial or transverse Beam diameters 5-25 mm Efficiency 10-20% Beam divergence 1-3 mrad

Figure 11.5 Solid state laser, e.g., ruby or Nd-YAG type.

lasers with less power output are neodymium yttrium glass (Nd

glass) and yttrium lithium fluoride (Nd YLF) lasers. Nd-YAG lasers can be operated in both pulsed and contin

uous modes. The operation is usually in TEM 00 mode. The laser can be Q switched. The mirror and window at the end of the rod are made of

quartz with suitable metal reflective coatings. The laser rod and mirrors deteriorate due to internal

defects, thermal fatigue, and atmospheric corrosion. Defective

rods require replacement. In most cases mirrors can be recoated.

The flash lights used have a typical life time of  $10^6$  cycles. In

some (older) designs separate mirrors are not used. The polished

rod ends are given a reflective coating.

#### 11.1.7 Ruby Lasers

This was the first successful laser produced about 42 years ago

and is still finding commercial applications. In construction, the ruby laser is similar to the Nd-YAG

laser described earlier. The laser medium or cavity is made from synthetically grown ruby single crystals. Ruby is

a  $Al_2O_3$  or corundum. At the time of crystal growing, about 0.5%

chromium is added and uniformly distributed. The lasing

and stimulation takes place in the chromium atoms. Pump

ing is achieved by flash lamps around the ruby rods which  
Typical Properties of Commercial Nd-YAG Laser Wavelength  
1.06  $\mu m$  continuous or pulsed Transverse mode TEM 00 Pulse  
energy 30 mJ-100 J Pulse duration 0.2-20 msec Pulse  
repetition rate  $10^{-3}$  -  $10^3$  Hz Efficiency 2-5% Continuous  
operation 10-30 W common-up to 100 w available Q switched  
operation 200 mJ-3 J Q repetition frequency 1-50 kHz Pulse  
duration Few milliseconds

are 45-250 mm long and have a diameter of 5-15 mm. Ruby is hard, mechanically strong, and has a good stability against radiation damage. Irregularities in crystal structure and uneven distribution of Cr and other impurities lower the efficiency. Ruby lasers emit in the visible red region and have a wavelength of  $0.6943 \mu\text{m}$ . They have a pulse output with a repetition frequency  $\sim 1.0/\text{sec}$ . The pulse energy is  $\sim$  a few J and duration  $\sim 1 \text{ msec}$ . This laser can be Q switched to give a peak power up to  $10^6$  watts for  $10^{-9}$  sec.

#### 11.1.8 Longitudinal Modes of Laser Beam

A laser beam is a result of atomic/molecular stimulation and the resonance of the light waves so produced in the cavity. This process is already reviewed in the preceding section. Ideally, the resonance should occur only at one wavelength or frequency giving a single mode, monochromatic output (Figure 11.6) at wavelength  $\lambda_0$ . In practice, the resonance occurs at many wavelengths due to the cavity dimensions and broad energy levels among which lasing and electron transfer occurs. The output beam is thus multimodal, i.e., it consists of many wavelengths centered about the main mode  $\lambda_0$ . Some of the modes are absorbed by the cavity losses and in reflection at the mirrors. Those escaping in the beam are

symmetrically situated about the main wavelength. The out

put of a laser is thus a beam having a predominant wave

length (or frequency) and a line width  $\Delta\lambda$  or  $\Delta\nu$ . The line width of a given laser depends on the cavity

dimensions, material of mirrors, electronic structure of the

lasing medium, and defects or impurities in it. Numerically the line width can be defined as the ratio  $\Delta\lambda / \lambda$

or  $\Delta\nu / \nu$ . For example, a low pressure CO<sub>2</sub> laser beam has a

dominant wavelength  $10.6 \times 10^{-6}$  m and a line width  $60 \times 10^6$  Hz. The line width will be (11.2)

where  $C$  is the velocity of light ( $3 \times 10^{10}$  cm/sec).  $\Delta\nu / \nu = \Delta\lambda / \lambda$   
Figure 11.6 Wavelength distribution. A Nd-YAG laser has a wavelength of  $1.06 \times 10^{-6}$  m and a

line width of  $1.2 \times 10^{11}$  Hz. Thus, the numerical line width is about  $4.2 \times 10^{-3}$  show

ing much broadening compared to a CO<sub>2</sub> laser. The line width can be controlled to some extent on labo

ratory laser setups. The fluorescent emission has a very broad spectrum

(Figure 11.6) showing a number of strong or weak lines as

there is no gain due to resonance. The above calculations show that even with line broaden

ing, the laser beam is still highly monochromatic.

#### 11.1.9 Focusing Properties of Lasers

A TEM<sub>00</sub> laser beam emerging from the window of the generator is a coherent and collimated beam having essentially a single wavelength  $\lambda$ . For practical purposes, the beam can be assumed to have a diameter (aperture) equal to that of the



window at the emergence point (see Figure 11.7) and a divergence  $q$ . This beam is conveyed to the work by a suitable arrangement of mirrors and focused on the work surface. The focusing is done by a suitable converging lens having a diameter  $D$  and a focal length  $F$ . Normally such a beam, when focused by a converging lens

(convex lens or combination lenses), should be thought of as coming to a point focus, i.e., having an infinitely small area. In

practice, the beam focuses on a spot having a significant radius

$(r_f)$  and area. Whenever a collimated beam passes through an opening

(aperture) it bends (diffracts) and acquires a divergence of angle  $q$ .

If there are a number of apertures, diffraction will occur at each

aperture and the beam will have a diameter larger than the original

one. The typical divergence of a laser beam is 1-5 mrad. Such a line width =  $\times \times \times = \times - - 60 \ 10 \ 3 \ 10 \ 10 \ 6 \ 10 \ 2 \ 12 \ 10 \ 6 \ 10 \ 4 \ 7 / . .$  Figure 11.7 Some characteristics of laser beams.

A divergent beam focuses on a spot having a minimum radius  $r_o$  given by (11.3)

where  $F$  is the focal length of the focusing (convergent) lens.

This shows that the spot diameter increases with focal length

and angle of divergence. The angle of divergence  $q$  is related to the wavelength  $\lambda$

and the lens (aperture) diameter  $D$  by the equation (assuming

that the beam fills the aperture) (11.4) As the wavelength is fixed,  $q$  can be decreased by increasing the aperture (lens and beam size)  $D$ . The original beam diameter is fixed by the laser generator window. The beam can be expanded by using beam expanders. These are Galilean telescopes (used reversely) and give a magnification (increase in diameter) from 5 to 20. The divergence angle will be reduced by about one order. Substituting for  $q$  in Equation (11.3) (11.5) Thus, by using a beam expander and a lens of large diameter the spot radius can be decreased to a limit. Also note that large diameter lenses will have a longer focal length  $F$  which will increase the spot size. It is therefore necessary to strike a balance between  $F$  and  $D$ . Another basic limitation on spot size arises from a phenomenon called "spherical aberration" (Figure 11.7). Spherical aberration arises from the fact that the rays of light coming from different parts of a lens get focused at different spots on the axis (axial aberration) and on the focal plane (lateral aberration). Thus, spherical aberration will always give a focal spot and not a point.  $r = F \theta = q \lambda = 1.22 \frac{D}{\lambda} \text{ rad}$  Spherical aberration can be reduced by using special aspheric lenses; however, applicable optical materials and

their properties put a limit to the possible correction. In summary, the focus of a laser beam produces a spot having a significant diameter. For many other reasons the practical "spot" is always larger than that calculated theoretically. A TEM  $00$  beam has a Gaussian distribution throughout and the focal spot also inherits this. So, the power level is very high on the central spot and diminishes toward the edge. Consequently the material reaction varies from the spot center to the edge. The beam edges are trimmed by the aperture, which allows only about 86% energy to pass through.

#### 11.1.10 Collimation

Scientific and industrial applications of radiation (light) usually involve focusing of a well-defined beam by a focusing lens system. An ordinary source of light (like an incandescent bulb) emits radiation all around, i.e., through a solid angle of  $4\pi$  steradians. It is virtually impossible to collect all this light and channel it into a beam. The process of obtaining a well-defined beam of light, consisting of parallel rays is called "collimation." Most of the apparatus using an ordinary bulb catch a small portion of the radiation by a collimator consisting of a suitable lens and

a

long tube. This arrangement creates a parallel beam having divergence ( $\sim$  few degrees). A laser beam is inherently collimated, i.e., it consists of

parallel rays requiring no further collimation. The beam has a

diameter equal to that of the window (mirror) through which it emerges. There is very little divergence ( $\sim 10^{-3}$  rad). This

beam is easy to focus on relatively small areas ( $\sim 10^{-1}$  mm)

creating a high energy density. The divergence can be further reduced by using a beam

expander. This is a Galilean telescope used in a reverse manner

so that the light enters the eyepiece and exits through the objective.

The beam diameter can be increased by a factor of 5-20.

This makes it possible to use a large diameter focusing lens (Figure 11.7).

#### 11.1.11 Coherence

This property is also inherent like collimation in a laser beam.

A collimated beam from an ordinary light source consists of parallel rays but the wave fronts of individual rays are not synchronized with each other and the collective wave front is

not well defined (Figure 11.7). In a laser beam the individual wavefronts are perfectly syn

chronized to present a straight and collective wavefront.

This

synchronization is inherent and persists in both space and time.

It can be imagined as the perfectly drilled marching of a group

of soldiers showing synchronization at all steps at all times. The main application of coherence is in measurement systems using laser, and in holography. They involve splitting the

beam into two parts, passing them through different paths, and

then recombining them to form a well-defined pattern. Coherence is not treated in detail as it has no major significance in laser heating.

then recombining them to form a well-defined pattern.

Coherence is not treated in detail as it has no major sig

nificance in laser heating.

#### 11.1.12 Depth of Focus

The laser beam coming out of the focusing lens converges to a

focal spot (see Figure 11.8) of radius  $r_f$  and diverges beyond.

Assume that the intensity  $I_0$  at the focal spot has a Gaussian dis

tribution, then before and beyond the spot the intensity will

remain Gaussian but will continuously decrease with distance  $z$

from it. The depth of focus ( $z_f$ ) is the distance between the focal

plane and two symmetrical planes before and beyond. The inten

sity of the beam on these planes has a chosen ratio with that on

the focal plane, (e.g.,  $I_z / I_0 = 0.5$ , etc.). Thus with

respect to the

focal plane at  $z = 0$ , the depth of focus will have two values  $\pm z$ . If the radius at focal spot is  $r_0$  then its radius  $r_z$  at a (chosen)

distance  $z$  is given by (11.6)  $r_z^2 = r_0^2 + \frac{z^2}{l^2}$  where  $l$  is the wavelength. (11.7) This value of  $z$  is the theoretical "depth of focus" and is

called "Rayleigh range." For practical purposes, it is more convenient to assume a

$r_z/r_0$  ratio of 5-10%. The calculations show that the form of

Equation (11.7) remains the same except for a numerical factor

(k) so that (11.8)

Where substituting for  $r_0$  in Equation (11.8) gives (11.9)

Figure 11.8 Concept of focal spot diameter and depth of focus of

a laser beam. If  $r_z/r_0 = k$  then  $z = \frac{r_0}{k} \sqrt{\frac{2}{\lambda}}$  Equation (11.9) relates the depth of focus to the focusing

lens parameters  $F$  and  $D$ . It shows that for a large value of  $z$ ,

the focal length  $F$  should be large and the diameter  $D$  small. A basic lens equation is (11.10) where  $n$  is the relative refraction coefficient and  $R_1$  and

$R_2$  the curvature of the two faces of the lens. For a given optical material  $n$  is constant. To obtain a

large value of  $F$ ,  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  must be large, i.e., the lens diam

eter  $D$  should be large. This shows that the requirement of

small  $D$  and large  $F$  is self-contradictory. The depth of focus

is therefore fixed when  $D$  is fixed by the beam diameter.

When a laser beam is incident on a material surface it is desirable that the beam is exactly focused on it. This will give maximum incident power (and hence efficiency). The material surface evenness, focusing accuracy, and machine vibrations are some of the factors which make exact focusing impossible. The concept of the depth of focus makes it possible to estimate the reduction in incident energy if the exact focus is missed. In laser drilling and some other applications the depth and shape of the heat is affected and the machined zone changes with the position of the focus with respect to the surface. It is necessary to intentionally defocus the beam to achieve correct machining. The depth of focus is useful in beam defocusing as it gives an estimate of the incident spot size and energy.

EXAMPLE 11.1

A germanium lens used on a CO<sub>2</sub> laser has a clear aperture of 18.7 mm and a focal length 16.95 mm. The wavelength of the laser is 10.6 μm. Assume that the aperture is completely filled by the beam.

Calculate 1. The theoretical depth of focus. 2. The depth of focus at a 10% increase in focal diameter.

Solution

We first calculate the focal spot radius  $r_o$  by using the relation  $F = 16.95 \text{ mm}$ ,  $l = 10.6 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mm}$ ,  $D = 18.7 \text{ mm}$   
 Theoretical depth of focus  $z_o$  For 10% increase in  $r_o$  From equation (11.6)  $r_o = \frac{F D}{2 l} = \frac{16.95 \times 18.7}{2 \times 10.6} = 146.11 \text{ mm}$   
 $z_o = \frac{2 F^2}{\lambda} = \frac{2 \times (16.95)^2}{1.06 \times 10^{-6}} = 5.38 \times 10^8 \text{ mm} = 538 \text{ km}$   
 $r_o = 146.11 \text{ mm}$   
 $z_o = 538 \text{ km}$

EXAMPLE 11.2

A laser beam of wavelength  $1.06 \mu\text{m}$  has a diameter  $3.0 \text{ mm}$  when coming out of the generator. The beam is expanded in a beam expander having a magnification by a factor of 10. It is proposed to use a quartz lens having a transmission of 85%. Now determine: 1. The angle of diversion of unexpanded or raw beam 2. The diversion angle after expansion 3. The focal spot diameter for the raw beam 4. Focal spot diameter for expanded beam

Solution

The raw beam has a diameter of  $3.0 \text{ mm}$  and the wavelength  $1.06 \mu\text{m}$ . The angle of diversion is  $\theta = \frac{\lambda}{D} = \frac{1.06 \times 10^{-6}}{3 \times 10^{-3}} = 3.53 \times 10^{-4} \text{ rad} = 0.201 \text{ degrees}$   
 On expansion the beam diameter is  $30 \text{ mm}$  The angle of diversion of the expanded beam is  $\theta' = \frac{\lambda}{D'} = \frac{1.06 \times 10^{-6}}{30 \times 10^{-3}} = 3.53 \times 10^{-5} \text{ rad} = 0.0201 \text{ degrees}$   
 Comparing  $\theta$  and  $\theta'$  shows that the diversion is decreased

by one order after expansion. The raw beam has a diameter of  $3.0 \text{ mm}$ . Assume that the

diameter of the quartz lens used is  $4.3 \text{ mm}$  and its focal length

is  $8.1 \text{ mm}$ . The radius of the focal spot will be The expanded beam has a diameter of  $30 \text{ mm}$ . Assume

that the lens used has a diameter of  $31.5 \text{ mm}$  and a focal length

of  $40 \text{ mm}$ . The spot radius will be This shows that the



expanded beam gives a fine focus

(hence, more energy density).

EXAMPLE 11.3

A laser beam has 0.1 cm focal spot and a power density  $q_0$  ( $W/cm^2$ ). A steel plate is to be treated by this beam for cutting.

Determine the time required for cutting a thickness  $h$  ( $< 0.2$  cm)

and the cutting rate. Density of steel  $7.8 g/cm^3$  Latent heat of evaporation  $7 \times 10^3 J/g$

Solution

We will first determine the heat required for cutting by considering a thickness of 0.1 cm under the spot.

Area and volume of steel 0.1 cm thick and diameter 0.1 cm is  $A = \frac{\pi}{4} d^2 = \frac{\pi}{4} (0.1)^2 = 7.85 \times 10^{-3} cm^2$  and  $V = A \times h = 7.85 \times 10^{-3} \times 0.1 = 7.85 \times 10^{-4} cm^3$ . Latent heat of vaporization  $L_B = 7 \times 10^3 J/g$ . Heat required for vaporization of material having thickness  $h$  cm is  $Q = \rho V L_B = 7.8 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-4} \times 7 \times 10^3 = 43.10 J$ .

If the cutting time is  $t$  (sec), the heat given is  $Q = q_0 A t$ . The time required is  $t = \frac{Q}{q_0 A} = \frac{43.10}{q_0 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-3}}$ . In time  $t$  a length equal to one spot diameter (0.1 cm) is cut.

For continuous cutting the speed per min will be  $v = \frac{0.1}{t} \times 60 = \frac{0.1 \times 60}{43.10 / (q_0 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-3})} = \frac{60 \times 0.1 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-3} q_0}{43.10} cm/min$

11.1.13 Transverse Modes in Lasers

In the previous section we have discussed the generation and characteristics of longitudinal modes in a laser cavity.

A laser cavity of length  $L$  cm. At a density  $\rho$  ( $g/cm^3$ ) Weight  $W = \rho V = \rho A L$  g/mm thickness  $h$  cm.  $Q = \rho V L_B = \rho A L h L_B = \rho A L h L_B$ .  $Q = \rho A L h L_B = 7.8 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-3} \times 0.1 \times 7 \times 10^3 = 43.10 J$ .  $t = \frac{Q}{q_0 A} = \frac{43.10}{q_0 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-3}}$ .  $v = \frac{0.1}{t} \times 60 = \frac{60 \times 0.1 \times 7.85 \times 10^{-3} q_0}{43.10} cm/min$ . There are other complex modes that occur in the cavity

due to a variety of reasons. Broadly speaking, these are

due to

the limited transverse dimension of cavity (e.g., diameter), the

curvature of mirrors, diffraction of electromagnetic waves, etc.

These modes are called transverse electromagnetic (TEM) and

affect the outgoing beam, both spatially and temporally (time

wise). They produce complex patterns of dark and bright

shades (Figure 11.9). The result (from our point of view) is a

symmetrical but nonuniform power distribution through the

beam cross-section. The patterns are classified and numbered. The simple TEM mode which is useful for our purpose is

the TEM  $00$  mode, in which the intensity and, hence, power has

a Gaussian distribution as shown in Figure 11.9. It has a cen

tral spot of maximum intensity which decreases exponen

tially in the radial direction. The beam radius is defined as

the distance from the center to a point at which the intensity is

reduced to  $0.135$  ( $1/e^2$ ) of its maximum value at the center so that

the power (area under the  $I - r$  curve) is 86.5% of the total area. Some other TEM patterns are also shown in Figure 11.9.

These are not used in material processing and are therefore

not discussed further. One useful aspect of the TEM  $00$  mode is that it retains its

Gaussian pattern throughout. The beam emerging from the generator and the final focal spot are both Gaussian though the beam diameter is different. The transverse mode of other TEM patterns change as they progress and undergo reflections or refraction in the beam manipulation and focusing systems. Commercial lasers used in material processing (power lasers) are adjusted for the TEM 00 mode.

#### 11.1.14 Temporal Characteristics of Lasers

Laser generators have two distinct features. They are pulsed or continuous. Pulsed lasers have a periodic output in short bursts or

pulses. The pulse duration is in the  $10^{-3}$  -  $10^{-6}$  sec range. The

pulses are repeated after a time interval called the "pulse repetition rate" which has a wide range depending on the

type of laser and mode of operation. Repetition rates from 0.1 to  $10^3$  Hz are possible. Solid state lasers, like ruby and Nd

YAG, which are pumped by flash lamps show a pulsed output. A typical uncontrolled pulsed output is shown in

Figure 11.10(A). The output consists of equally spaced spikes.

The energy (intensity) increases to a maximum and then

slowly decays. This is called a "free running pulse." This

type of pulse is obtained by controlling the frequency of pumping lights or discharge circuits. Total energy (J) in a pulse will be the area under the I - t

curve. For small generators it is of the order of  $10^{-3}$  J. The

power in the pulse will be average energy/sec (W), i.e.,  $E/t$

(Figure 11.10(B)). It is generally in the range of 1.0-30 W.

Pulse characteristics are measured by an oscilloscope trace or

by a suitable calorimeter. All the reported values of energy

and power are for TEM  $00$  mode. Pulse discharge can be controlled by adjusting the pump

ing frequency and cavity optics. A controlled pulse is shown in Figure 11.10(B). The

energy increases quickly to a peak value and decreases to a

plateau. If the pulse repetition rate is fast, we get a quasi or

semi-continuous pulse. In heating applications the pulse represents a "dose"

of energy incident on the material surface. The intensity of

the dose is in watts/unit area (e.g.,  $\text{W/cm}^2$ ), applied for the

pulse duration time  $t$  sec. It is important to choose a proper

pulse power to achieve the proper temperature at the required

site. A lower power will not raise the temperature to the

required level. A higher dose will produce a very high tem

perature which will spoil the operation. We will discuss

this point in more detail in subsequent sections.

#### 11.1.15 Q Switching of the Laser Beam

This is a very interesting way of changing the pulse shape

as

shown in Figure 11.10(C). The cavity in a Q switched laser contains a device called

the Q switch. There are many types of Q switches such as a rotating prism or mirror, electro-optic or electroacoustic devices.

These devices are switchable reflectors i.e., they will totally reflect the beam or allow it to pass through when a signal is applied. The position of the Q switch in a cavity is shown in Figure 11.10(B). In the beginning, the switch is turned on along with the pumping source. No laser beam is produced as there is no resonant cavity. The pump keeps on exciting the electrons to a higher level resulting in a buildup of a large population in the higher level. On switching off the Q switch, a resonant cavity is suddenly available. A powerful pulse of very high peak intensity but very short duration ( $\sim 10^{-9}$  sec) emerges. The shape of a Q-switched pulse is shown in Figure 11.10(C). Q switching thus produces very powerful pulses ( $\sim 10^8$  W) of short duration. The pulse repetition can be  $\sim 10^3$  Hz. Q switching is very useful for precision cutting, drilling, and welding of thin sheets, fine wires, etc. All the three lasers of interest to us, viz. the ruby, Nd-YAG, and CO<sub>2</sub> can be Q switched. Another variety of a

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Figure 11.10 Typical laser outputs.

Q-switched pulse is the mode-locked

pulse shown in Figure 11.10(D). It has roughly the same overall

pulse shape but is made of a number of synchronized subpulses.

Mode locking arises from multimode (frequencies) generation of longitudinal waves. Mode locking is achieved by generating

a broad line width and adjusting the cavity losses. Regular Q-switched and mode-locked Q-switched pulses

are sometimes simultaneously generated. A technique somewhat similar to Q switching is called "cav

ity dumping." Here the laser is continuously pumped and the

beam is "stored" in the cavity (similar to charging a capacitor).

On a signal the stored beam is dumped out in one large energy

pulse of short duration.

Continuous Output

Some lasers like CO<sub>2</sub> and Nd-YAG give a continuous output as

shown in Figure 11.10(E). The amplified output shows a wavy

or spiked trace. In fact, CO<sub>2</sub> laser is almost always operated in

CW (continuous wave) mode. The output power is 10-10<sup>4</sup> W.

There is no control as in a pulsed output. The power incident

on a material surface is controlled by moving the work or the

laser beam to adjust the dwell time. Nd-YAG and ruby lasers

rated as lower (10-100 W) are generally pulse operated.

### 11.1.16 Application of Lasers for Material Processing

For material processing the important attributes of laser are: 1. Generation of very high temperature on a very small area of the material surface in a very short time. 2. Absence of any protective atmosphere. 3. Practically no heat affected zone. 4. The laser cannot penetrate deeper than about 2.0 mm at the maximum. It is more suitable and efficient for thin work. These attributes make it possible to heat any material to any

desired temperature up to its boiling, burning, or charring point. Consider a material heated from room temperature  $T_0$

( $\sim 25^\circ\text{C}$ ) to progressively higher temperatures. For our analy

sis, we will divide all materials into two categories. 1. Materials like metals, ceramics, glass, etc., which will progressively melt, boil, and evaporate. 2. Materials which do not melt, but char, burn, or disintegrate at higher temperatures, like wood, textile, and rubber. When heated, materials absorb heat according to their

specific and latent heats. The temperature-heat content char

acteristics for the two categories are shown in Figure 11.11. For the first category, the heat absorbed from  $T_0$  to and

above  $T_b$  will be (per unit mass)  $H_1 = C_s (T_m - T_0)$  up to melting point ( $T_m$  °C)  $H_2 = L_m$  latent heat ( $L_m$ ) during melting  $H_3 = C_l (T_b - T_m)$  up to boiling point ( $T_m$  °C)  $H_4 = L_b$  latent heat ( $L_b$ ) during boiling  $H_5 = C_n (T_f - T_b)$  up to final temperature ( $T_f$ )  $\Sigma H =$  Total heat required.

Figure 11.11 Energy, power pulse duration for laser applications. For the second category the heat required will be  $H = C_s$

$(T_f - T_0)$ . Depending on the process to be carried out, the material

will be required to be heated to any temperature from  $T_0$  to  $T_f$

by supplying the necessary heat at the process location. If the heat supplied is less than that required, the process

will be incomplete or unsuccessful. If it is much more than required, the material will melt or boil and evaporate. It is therefore necessary to achieve a balance between

heat requirement and supply. In laser heating there is practically

no control on the energy of the beam. Control can be exerted by adjusting the time of laser application. In a pulsed

laser, time is controlled by pulse duration. For a continuous

laser, time is adjusted by moving the process material. Typical application areas for different temperatures,

power densities required, and interaction time are indicated

in Figure 11.11. Consider heating of 0.4% carbon steel having the following

average properties: Heat required (J) per g for heating from 25 to 2860°C in

various steps will be  $H_1 = 0.57(1500 - 25) = 840$   $H_2 = L_m = 268$   $H_3 = 0.76(2860 - 1500) = 1033$   $H_4 = L_b = 6720$   
The above calculations show that heat required for heat

ing to about 1000°C for processes such as heat treatment is

about 556 J/g. Density 7.67 g/cm<sup>3</sup> Melting point ( $T_m$ ) 1500°C Boiling point ( $T_b$ ) 2860°C Specific heat of Solid ( $C_s$ ) 0.57 J/g°C Latent heat of melting ( $L_m$ ) 268 J/g Specific heat of liquid ( $C_l$ ) 0.76 J/g°C Latent heat of boiling ( $L_b$ ) 6720 J/g Heat required for melting, as in welding, is  $840 + 268$

$= 1100$  J/g. Heat required for evaporation, as in cutting or drilling, is

$840 + 268 + 1033 + 6720 = 8860$  J/g, and the major part is that

of the latent heat of boiling.

#### 11.1.17 Laser-Material Interaction



A laser beam incident on and absorbed by a material, generates heat. This heat (at least in the beginning) is concentrated on the focal spot. Later it is transferred to the interior mostly by conduction. The laser source may be a pulsed or a continuous one. If a single pulse is incident on the spot it transfers a single "dose" of energy (J) to the material during the pulse duration ( $10^{-3}$  sec).

If required, more pulses can be given at an interval equal to the pulse repetition frequency. In the continuous wave (CW) source the energy supply is continuous. The required power is transmitted by adjusting the time of exposure. The transfer of energy to the material surface, its absorption, and transfer is governed by a very large number of variables. These can be divided into two categories. 1. Properties of the laser beam and the beam transfer and focusing optical train. 2. Properties of the work material, such as thermal conductivity, reflectivity, etc. Many of the material properties are dependant on temperature and time. The interplay of these two categories makes it virtually impossible to develop a satisfactory theoretical approach for laser material interactions that will be applicable in all situations. Our aim is to establish a method for estimating the temperature field in a laser-heated material for a given

laser power or vice versa. Hence, the treatment of the interaction problem that follows is largely empirical. With some modifications the treatment can also be applied to the electron beam (EB)-material problem. The laser-material interaction-related zone is shown in

Figure 11.12. The variables affecting the process can now be

identified as follows: 1. Laser beam Wavelength, frequency -  $\lambda$ , Hz Mode - TEM  $00$  or other Emission - Continuous (CW) or pulse Pulse duration - sec Pulse repetition frequency - PRF Hz - Adjustable Yes/No Power - M Q switching - Yes/No Divergence angle Beam diameter 2. Beam manipulation Optics - Mirrors, lenses, material and absorption Focal length -  $f$  (cm)

Figure 11.12 Energy transfer from laser beam to work. Depth of focus - cm Interchangeable lenses - Yes/No Focal spot radius -  $r_f$  (cm) Monitoring microscope - Yes/No Power measurement - Yes/No Shutter and diaphragm - Yes/No 3. Material properties Type of material - Metal, polymer, ceramic Reflectivity and its dependence on surface finish, wavelength, temperature, etc. Thermal conductivity -  $K$  ( $W/cm^{\circ}C$ ) Specific Heat -  $C$  ( $J/g^{\circ}C$ ) Thermal diffusivity -  $a$  ( $cm^2/sec$ ) Density -  $\rho$  ( $g/cm^3$ ) Latent heat of fusion  $L_M$  -  $J/g$  Melting temperature  $T_M$  -  $^{\circ}C$  Latent heat of fusion  $L_B$  -  $J/g$  Boiling temperature  $T_B$  -  $^{\circ}C$  Thickness  $h$  - cm Processing required - cutting, welding, etc. 4. Machine related Work manipulation, axes, manual, automatic, programmable shielding, assisting gas control. The behavior of materials on heating is shown in

Figure 11.11. On heating a metallic, ceramic, plastics, and glass

materials will melt at the melting temperature and will absorb heat due to specific heat and temperature rise. At melting temperature  $T_m$  they will absorb the latent heat of fusion  $L_M$ . If heating is continued further, the heat will be absorbed up to the boiling temperature  $T_B$  and on continued heating, the

latent heat of boiling  $L_B$  will be absorbed. The vapor so produced will blow out with or without gas assistance. The heat input to the material through the focal spot

will have to be controlled to obtain the required processing temperature. Thus, for heat treatment the temperature required

will be less than  $T_M$ . For welding it will be  $>T_M$  and less than

$T_B$ . The depth to which the material gets heated depends on the thermal diffusivity and time. Materials such as wood, paper, cloth, etc., do not melt; but

they get charred or evaporated or burn on heating. For all types

of cutting and drilling operations on both types of materials the

temperature required is higher than the boiling or the burning

temperature  $T_B$ . Approximate temperature ranges, the power densities

required, and observed interaction times are also shown in

Figure 11.11. A generalized commercial laser beam system is shown in

Figure 11.13.

#### 11.1.18 Reflectivity and Absorptivity

When radiation strikes a surface, a part of it is absorbed and

the rest is reflected. The fraction of incident energy absorbed

is called absorptivity ( $A$ ). Reflectivity ( $R$ ) is the fraction that is

reflected. Hence, (11.11) It is the absorbed fraction of

incident energy that is

useful for heating by laser. Hence, reflectivity represents a

direct loss. The reflectivity of a material surface is governed by

many interrelated factors (see Figure 11.14). The surface condition is perhaps the most important. Clean, smooth, and polished surfaces are almost 100% reflective whereas oxidized, rough surfaces can have an absorptivity of about 70%.

Very clean and polished surfaces are difficult to process by laser. It is sometimes necessary to coat these with antireflec

tive coatings. Reflectivity depends on the wavelength of the incident

beam. Figure 11.14 (B) shows that the absorptivity is poor for

the far infrared wavelength of a CO<sub>2</sub> laser (which is a commonly used power laser) and is better for a ruby laser (which

does not have enough power!). R A= -( )1 F i g u r e 1 1 . 1 3 A g e n e r a l i z e d l a s e r b e a m s y s t e m . Absorptivity which is low (~ 8%) at low temperature,

increases to about 14-16% at higher temperatures. This has

a direct effect on heating. The initial low heating rate due to

high reflectivity increases quickly as the surface temper

ature rises. The angle of incidence also decides reflectivity.

Best absorption is obtained when the angle of incidence

is 90°. Lastly, absorptivity increases with the energy density

( $w/cm^2$ ) of the incident beam (Figure 11.14(D)). This may be

due to faster temperature rise with a powerful beam. Reliable data on reflectivity and absorptivity are scarce.

The figures available may not be reproducible in each situation. For estimating, a reflectivity of 70-80% may be assumed

after beginning the process. At the start, a 10% absorptivity

Figure 11.14 Absorptivity of metals, typical behavior.

appears to give reasonable estimates (applicable for very short,  $\leq 1$  msec pulse durations). When heating involves melting and evaporation, a higher

apparent absorptivity ( $\sim 50-70\%$ ) may be used.

#### 11.1.19 Laser Penetration

Theoretical aspects of concentrated source-material reaction

were already introduced in Section 4.7. We have discussed the heating of the surface with time on

exposure to a laser beam. We will now consider the penetration of heat along the vertical ( $z$ ) axis. Here "penetration" is

understood as the depth to which the material is heated to the

desired temperature. It is assumed that the absorbed heat

flows only in  $z$  direction and the related physical properties

are constant. If heating is to be done for surface treatment such as

hardening, the desired temperature is less than  $T_M$  and higher

or equal to the desired hardening or phase transformation temperature. For applications such as welding, the heating temperature is higher than  $T_M$  and lower than  $T_B$ . For drilling

and cutting operations the temperature desired is higher than

$T_B$  so that the material evaporates through the full thickness.

There is no single equation to predict the depth of penetration

for all the processes given above. For heating below the melting temperature  $T_M$  we can use

Equation (4.33), Equation (4.36) to calculate the temperature

at the desired depth  $z$  and time  $t$ , i.e.,  $T(z, t)$ . This equation is

strictly applicable for continuous laser or for pulsed laser in

the time regime  $t \leq t_i$ . Once the beam is discontinued

(or the pulse is over), only the surface cools immediately. Due

to the superheat ( $T_M - T_P$ ) the heating still continues for some

time. This heating is not calculated from the equation. Thus,

the critical heating and cooling rates essential for heat treat

ment cannot be applicable over the full depth of penetration.

If heating is continued for a longer time, heat will be lost by

conduction outside the target zone. For welding, it is essential to obtain a temperature  $\geq T_M$

without evaporation. Melting absorbs additional heat as latent heat  $L_M$ . This heat will have to be supplied by a CW beam or from the superheat  $(T_B - T_M)$  obtained from the pulse.

Roughly, the penetration depth  $h$ (cm) obtained when the surface is heated to  $T_B$  can be estimated as (11.12) There is no satisfactory equation to predict the velocity of the solid-liquid boundary as the melting progresses. Penetration

depth with lasers having power less than 800-1000 W is about 0.1 to 1.5 mm. Penetration increases with laser power. Thus laser welding in its normal form can be applied to microwelding (welding of small, thin materials). With lasers having power more than 1-5 kW, larger penetration can be obtained because of "keyholing." Depth up to 20 mm has been obtained. Laser drilling or cutting involves vigorous vaporization.

The vapor so produced is blown or burned by a suitable gas jet.

This exposes a fresh surface for vaporization. Thus, material

removal is very fast. As the evaporation front recedes from the

focal spot, the intensity of beam decreases and evaporation stops due to inadequate energy supply. This restricts the cut

ting and drilling depths to a maximum of 1-3 mm depending on the laser power. Gas blowing with air or oxygen increases the depth. Reflectivity (or absorptivity) greatly affects

all laser heat

ing processes. A suitable allowance for this must be made in estimating laser power requirements. The time duration of heating is the most important con

trol variable. A shorter time will produce lower temperature and penetration. A longer time will heat the surface to an undesirably higher temperature resulting in plasma generation and thermal shock. The heat affected zone (HAZ) will also

be broad. The penetration depth can be controlled by slightly defo

ocusing the beam so that the focus spot is little above or below

the material surface. Remember that the beam energy is maximum at the focus spot and will decrease away from it.  $h T M = 3 45$ .

#### 11.1.20 The Temperature Field

Laser heating applications involve a wide temperature range as discussed in Section 11.1.9. In this range the material undergoes a change of state from solid to vapor. The heat flow

is from the surface to the interior. There is no one equation that can be used to calculate the

temperature field in the material. Available equations are quite

complicated and are applicable under limited conditions only. The laser energy input is of two types, continuous wave

(CW) and pulse. Separate equations are involved for these two

types of inputs. We treat the input as a point source



having a

uniform energy density and a circular shape of radius  $r_f$ . The

heat flow in the material is assumed to be unidirectional

(direction  $z$ , Figure 11.12) in the process time  $t$  sec. The change

in thermal properties with temperature is neglected. For a continuous point source the equation chosen is (11.13)

where  $T(z, t)$  = Temperature on axis at depth  $z$  and time  $t$   
 $q_0$  = Input power density  $W/cm^2$   $a$  = Thermal diffusivity  $cm^2/sec$   
 $K$  = Thermal conductivity  $w/cm^{\circ}C$   $r_f$  = Radius of focal spot  $cm$   
 $t$  = Exposure time sec (The  $ierfc$  functions in the brackets are integrated comple

mentary error functions which are available in tabulated form.) The temperature at surface  $T(0, t)$  is given by (11.14) The power density required to obtain a certain tempera

ture  $T$  at the surface is (11.15)  $T(z, t) = \frac{q_0}{K} \left[ 1 - \frac{ierfc\left(\frac{z}{2\sqrt{at}}\right)}{ierfc\left(\frac{r_f}{2\sqrt{at}}\right)} \right]$   
The limiting temperature at the surface when  $t \rightarrow \infty$  is (11.16) If the input is a pulse we have to consider two time regimes.

The first regime is from  $0$  to  $t_i$  where  $t_i$  is the pulse duration (S).

In this time the pulse energy (J) is deposited on the surface and

is heated to a temperature  $T$ . In the second regime which lasts

from  $t_i$  to  $t$  the deposited energy heats the interior. There is no

fresh energy input. We again assume that both regimes are of

sufficiently small duration to assure an essentially unidirec

tional heat flow. The temperature distribution in the first regime is given by (11.17) Here  $t \leq t_i$ . At the end

of the first regime ( $t = t_i$ ) the surface has attained

a temperature  $T(0, t_1)$  which will decrease logarithmically in the

second regime. The temperature distribution is now given by (11.18)

where  $t > t_i$  and

$Q_0$  = Pulse energy (J)

$\rho$  = Density ( $\text{g/cm}^3$ )

$c$  = Specific heat ( $\text{J/g}^\circ\text{C}$ )

$A$  = Spot area =  $\pi r^2$  (cm) The power density  $q_0$  to obtain a certain temperature at

the surface  $T(0, t_i)$  will be given by (11.19)

which is similar to Equation 11.17 as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $T \rightarrow T_0$ , i.e., sur

rounding or initial temperature.  $T(t) = T_0 + \frac{q_0 \sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{\pi k \rho c}} \text{erfc}\left(\frac{z}{2\sqrt{kt}}\right)$  (11.19)  $\frac{q_0 \sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{\pi k \rho c}} = \frac{Q_0}{\pi r^2 \sqrt{\pi k \rho c}} = 0.884 \frac{Q_0}{r^2 \sqrt{k \rho c}}$  We can rearrange Equation 11.19 above to obtain the

pulse time  $t_i$  to heat the surface to the required temperature. (11.20) In Equation (11.19) and Equation (11.20) we can substi

tute  $T_M$  or  $T_B$  in place of  $T$  to obtain the power density required

for melting or boiling temperature at the surface. In cutting and drilling operations we are interested in

continuous evaporation from the surface and have to consider

the latent heat of evaporation  $L_B$  (J/g). The power density for

vigorous evaporation is given by (11.21) A continuous laser power  $q$  is given in watts. For a pulsed

laser what we know is the average or total energy in the pulse

( $Q$  or  $q$ ) and the pulse duration  $t_i$  (sec). This can be converted

to watts as (11.22) If  $r_f$  is the spot diameter (cm) the power density is (11.23)

## 11.2 ELECTRON BEAM HEATING

### 11.2.1 Introduction

An electron is a fundamental particle carrying a fixed negative charge ( $-e$ ) and having a mass ( $m$ ). It can be accelerated

to tremendous velocities by an electromagnetic field. This increases the kinetic energy of the electron. When a beam of electron (EB) so accelerated strikes a

target matter, it loses kinetic energy, which is converted into

heat in the target. This is the principle of electron beam heating.  $Q = I_e t$  (11.22)  $q = \frac{Q}{A} = \frac{I_e t}{\pi r_f^2}$  (11.23)

Note that the beam itself is "cold" and the heat is created

inside the target. An electron beam can be precisely focused (like a beam of

light) by an electromagnetic focusing coil which acts as a lens.

The charge on the electron thus enables the electrons to be accelerated to high energy and also to concentrate the energy

on a small spot by focusing. The heat created is focused on a small spot ( $d \leq 1.0$  mm)

and an extremely high temperature is created locally. Thus the

target spot can be melted or evaporated in a very short time

( $\sim$  few msec). The bulk target material is essentially

unaffected. Due to the tremendous kinetic energy, the beam can penetrate

the target to a considerable depth. All the above-mentioned characteristics of the electron

beam make it an ideal heat source for welding, small scale

melting, or evaporation applications. In the next sections we will discuss in detail the genera

tion, control, properties, and applications of the electron beam

(EB) as an industrial heat source.

#### 11.2.2 Generation of Electron Beam

A general industrial setup for producing and controlling an electron beam is shown in Figure 11.15. The electrons are produced

by indirectly heating a negatively charged cathode made

from a material such as lanthanum hexaboride, which releases

electrons on heating to 1400-1600°C. The heating filament is

made of tungsten. The cathode heater assembly is sealed and

has a life of 200 h. The released electrons are collected and

directed forward by the cathode cup. A bias cup controls the electrons

moving ahead. This acts like a grid in a triode vacuum tube. An anode cup with a hole in the center is next. It is posi

tively charged and accelerates the incident electron stream

which passes through the hole. The emerging beam is shaped

by a coil below the anode. The potential difference which accelerates

the electrons to high energy is applied between the

cathode

(-ve) and anode (+ve) by a high voltage cable. A ceramic high

voltage insulator electrically separates the anode and cathode.

Depending on the design and application the voltage is between

80 and 150 kV and is variable to suit the requirements. Figure 11.15 Electron beam machine.

The whole arrangement, known as the "electron generator," is installed in a casing. There is vacuum connection on

the side and an isolation vacuum valve at the bottom of the casing. A chamber next to the electron generator contains the focus

ing coil and deflection coil. The focusing coil focuses the beam on

a small area on the work or target. It also adjusts the distance (l)

between the focusing coil and the target. This distance and the

focus spot diameter are important process parameters. The work is situated in a vacuum work chamber located

below. There are arrangements such as a coordinate table, hold

ing devices, etc., in the work chamber. A vacuum connection

evacuates the chamber to about  $10^{-2}$  to  $10^{-4}$  torr. The work can be remotely manipulated inside the cham

ber to bring the required location in the beam path. Electrons on impact (at high velocities) on the target sur

face generate X-rays which can be hazardous, hence the cham

ber is protected by proper shields. The observation window is

made from lead glass which is opaque to X-rays. Electrons in the beam on impact with gas molecules in the

air lose their energy. Hence, the whole process is carried out in

vacuum. The generator compartment requires a higher vacuum

( $\sim 10^{-6}$  torr), hence it is isolated from the work chamber and has

a separate high vacuum system for pumping. There is an optical observation system through which the

spot and the beam action can be observed. The deflection coil

deflects the beam about the central spot. Some machines have

a beam tracking arrangement so that the beam can follow a

programmed path. The current in the high voltage circuit (cathode-anode) is a

few milliamperes. Extensive water-cooling arrangements are

made in the generator. The work chamber can be of a small size ( $0.5 \text{ m}^3$ ) to a very

large one ( $2-5 \text{ m}^3$ ) depending on the requirements. An electron beam carries a current (due to the charge)

and the circuit between the anode and the work has to be com

pleted. This is achieved by grounding the work ( $0 \text{ V}$ ). It is then

necessary that the work is conducting. This is why EB can

only operate on metals.

11.2.3 Characteristics of EB Charge ( $-e$ ) on the electron =  $1.6 \times 10^{-19}$  coulombs (C) Mass of the electron ( $m_e$ ) =  $9.1083 \times 10^{-31}$  kg If an electron (initially at rest) is placed in an electric

field of intensity  $E$  (V/m), it will experience a force  $F$  which will

cause it to move with a velocity  $U$  (m/sec) toward the positive. The work done when an electron moves under a force  $F$  in

a field having a voltage  $V$  is given by (11.24) The kinetic energy acquired by the electron due to the

work Equating the work and energy substituting for  $e$  and  $m_e$ , the values given above (11.25) Thus, if the cathode-anode voltage is 80 kV It is difficult to establish a formula for the focal spot diame

ter of EB as a large number of variables are involved. It involves

some machine parameters, and the data given by the manufac

turer is useful for that particular machine. There are several Word done =  $eV = 1.2 \times 10^{-18} m U^2$  eV  $m U^2 = eV m_e e = 1.2 \times 10^{-18} U^2 = 600 \text{ n km/sec } U = \sqrt{\frac{eV}{m_e}} = \sqrt{\frac{600 \times 10^3 \times 1.6 \times 10^{-19}}{9.1 \times 10^{-31}}} = 1.5 \times 10^8 \text{ km/sec}$  Kinetic energy  $\frac{1}{2} J = \frac{1}{2} m U^2 = \frac{1}{2} \times 9.1 \times 10^{-31} \times (1.5 \times 10^8)^2 = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J}$  . ( . ) .

measurement techniques that can be used to measure the actual

diameter produced under given operating conditions. The spot

diameters generally available are in the range of  $10^{-3}$  -1.0 cm.

The diameter decreases with increasing accelerating voltage. If

the beam current ( $I$ ) and accelerating voltage ( $V$ ) are known, the

total beam power is  $I \times V$  and the power density (11.26) can be calculated. Typical power densities for EB are in

the range of  $10^5$  - $10^8$  w/cm<sup>2</sup> . High energy electrons penetrate a metal target to a con

siderable depth. The electrons collide with the free electrons

and the ionic lattice. At each collision some energy is lost

which is converted into heat. The number of collisions under

gone before the electron comes to rest (very low kinetic energy)

is a statistical phenomena. Due to each collision the direction of the electron changes

and the incident beam scatters inside the target. The depth(d)

to which the electrons penetrate is given by

where  $V$  = Accelerating voltage and  $r$  the target density ( $\text{g/cm}^3$ ) Thus, if  $V = 75 \text{ kV}$  and  $r = 7.8 \text{ g/cm}^3$   $d = 2.6 \times 10^{-12} \times (75 \times 10^3)^2 \times 7.8 = 0.114 \text{ cm}$  At  $100 \text{ kV}$   $d = 0.203 \text{ cm}$

#### 11.2.4 EB – Noteworthy Points

An electron beam can be continuous or pulsed. It is initiated

by the application of current to the cathode and accelerating

voltage between cathode and anode pulsing can be easily

achieved by switching the power. During their journey from the cathode to the target, the

electrons will suffer energy loss if they collide with gas mol

ecules in the air. To avoid this loss the entire apparatus has  $q I V d = \cdot \times ( / ) p 2 4 \text{ w/cm}^2$   $d r = \times - 2 6 10 12 2 . /V$

to be kept under vacuum. The need for vacuum ( $\sim 10^{-4}$  to  $10^{-6}$

torr) is one of the disadvantages of EB. Small machines have

a single vacuum system. Larger machines have a high vac

uum system for the electron beam generator. The work cham

ber, which is isolated from the generator, has a separate, large

capacity, and medium vacuum system. As mentioned before, an electron beam can operate only



on metallic (conducting) targets. The energy density in the spot is very high ( $\sim 10^8 \text{ W/cm}^2$ )

and is easily controlled by the high voltage and the focusing

currents. This enables the creation of very high temperatures

at the spot. There is no temperature limit. Any metal or alloy

can be melted or evaporated at the spot. Due to vacuum there

is no oxidation at the target. Due to the electric control, the beam can be deflected so

that it can scan the required target area. It can be tracked or

programmed to follow a particular path over the target surface. Due to local heating of a small area in a very short time

( $\sim 1.0 \text{ msec}$ ) the heat affected zone is very narrow or nonexistent. Deep penetration, narrow heat affected zone, no temper

ature limit, easy control on the time and energy of the beam,

and clean environment (no oxidation) make EB an ideal heat

ing method for welding. Virtually any metal or dissimilar metals

can be precision welded. Depending on the work manipulating system and the size

of the work chamber, very small or relatively large assemblies

can be welded on production scale. Hence, EB is used for elec

tronic welding (microwelding), automotive components, rocket

components, etc. EB is also used for special alloy melting, vacuum sputter

ing, drilling etc.

#### 11.2.5 EB – Material Interaction

When an EB strikes the target it penetrates to a considerable

depth until its kinetic energy is fully absorbed by the target lat

tice and free electrons. The main body of heat is created below the

surface and acts essentially as an internal volume source of heat. If the beam is pulsed, a certain “dose” of energy is depos

ited as heat which then spreads around in the target. In the case of a continuous beam the penetration is deeper and

may pierce the target. As the process time is short (0.1-2.0 sec) the

heat flow is mainly in the up-and-down stream of the beam. The beam and the target reaction produces emissions

which consist of target atoms, ions, electrons, and X-rays

(Figure 11.16). Due to the intense heat and sublimation, plasma

or vapor or small molten drops are also produced. In fact, by

using an appropriate spectrometer these emissions can be used

for chemical analysis and characterization of the target mate

rial. The hot spot also gives out thermal radiation. The heat spreads up and melts the material. The expan

sion of the material and occluded gases produces vigorous cur

rents. This causes spurting and the molten metal is ejected

out. The heat that spreads downward causes melting mostly

confined to a conical volume pointing downward. The energy distribution in the focal spot is gaussian with

a peak at the center.

Figure 11.16 Electron beam-target interaction. For deep penetration the beam is focused at a distance

lower than the target surface. This is achieved by adjusting

the current in the focusing coil. It changes the distance  $l$

between the coil and the focal spot. Thus, this distance  $l$  and

the focusing coil current are critical parameters. There is no exact analytical method of predicting the pen

etration depth, spread, and temperatures in the reaction zone.

Control is established by the accelerating voltage, cathode cur

rent and the focusing coil currents, and pulse time. Like the

laser beam, the target material has some reflectivity which

reduces the efficiency.

#### 11.2.6 Commercial EB Equipment

The specifications of commercial EB machines usually contain

the following specifications: Anode voltage kV and range of variation Beam current mA Pulse operation Pulse repetition rate - Hz Pulse duration and range - msec Beam diameter - mm Vacuum system - Pressure limits - mbar, torr Pumping time Beam deflection and scanning - mm<sup>2</sup> Focusing parameters - Lens to target distance Beam viewing and tracking (optional) Work chamber volume - m<sup>3</sup>, length, width, and height Coordinate table length, width, range, and programming Gun positions - standard and optional Work piece - Maximum dimensions accomodated Additional manipulation axes Total power requirement kW Auxiliaries - Transformer Water requirement - m<sup>3</sup> /h Operational data are supplied by the manufacturer to

suit customers' requirements Servicing and spare parts

supplied by the manufacturer

## 12 12. Vacuum Engineering

### 12.2 UNITS FOR VACUUM

The fundamental unit of vacuum is that of pressure, which is Pascal (Pa, N/m<sup>2</sup>). However, vacuum is always quoted with reference to environmental or atmospheric pressure which is 10<sup>5</sup> Pa, or 1 bar, or 760 mm Hg. One bar is defined as 10<sup>5</sup> Pa.

Hence, units commonly used for vacuum are 1 torr = 1.0 mm Hg = 10<sup>3</sup> μ Hg (micron) = 133.3 Pa or 1 mbar = 10<sup>2</sup> Pa. For conversion 1 mbar = 7.5 × 10<sup>-1</sup> torr = 750 microns or 1 torr = 1.33 mbar = 1000 microns. As far as possible, we will use torr in our discussion as it appears more frequently in literature. Thus, vacuum is quoted in 10<sup>-n</sup> torr where n is a whole number. Hence, 1 atmosphere is 7.5 × 10<sup>-1</sup> torr. Subsequent lower pressures will be 10<sup>-1</sup>, 10<sup>-2</sup>, etc. Low pressures (not much lower than atmosphere) are quoted in mm of water (kg/m<sup>2</sup>) or mm of Hg. Another unit we will be coming across when dealing with vacuum systems is "throughput" (Q). This is defined as the product of the pumping speed (S) and the inlet pressure (P), i.e., Q can also be considered as the quantity of gas in pressure × volume units at a specified temperature. Q can be quoted in Pa × m<sup>3</sup>/sec, or more conventionally as torr × liter/sec. Throughput will be useful in calculating pumping capacity, system leaks, and outgassing.

10<sup>5</sup> Pa, or 1 bar, or 760 mm Hg. One bar is defined as 10<sup>5</sup> Pa. Hence, units commonly used for vacuum are 1 torr = 1.0 mm Hg = 10<sup>3</sup> μ Hg (micron) = 133.3 Pa or 1 mbar = 10<sup>2</sup> Pa. For conversion 1 mbar = 7.5 × 10<sup>-1</sup> torr = 750 microns or 1 torr = 1.33 mbar = 1000 microns. As far as possible, we will use torr in our discussion as it

appears more frequently in literature. Thus, vacuum is quoted in 10<sup>-n</sup> torr where n is a whole

number. Hence, 1 atmosphere is 7.5 × 10<sup>-1</sup> torr. Subsequent lower

pressures will be 10<sup>-1</sup>, 10<sup>-2</sup>, etc. Low pressures (not much lower than atmosphere) are

quoted in mm of water (kg/m<sup>2</sup>) or mm of Hg. Another unit we will be coming across when dealing with

vacuum systems is "throughput" (Q). This is defined as the product of the pumping speed (S) and the inlet pressure (P), i.e., Q can also be considered as the quantity of gas in pressure

×

volume units at a specified temperature. Q can be quoted in

Pa

× m<sup>3</sup>/sec, or more conventionally as torr × liter/sec. Throughput will be useful in calculating pumping capac

ity, system leaks, and outgassing.

### 12.3 VACUUM PUMPS

Vacuum or low pressure is achieved in a container or vessel by

removing the air or gases in it. The devices used for this are

collectively called "vacuum pumps." There are many types of vacuum pumps in use. Some of

them are "true" pumps. They draw the gas out by suction, com

press it, and discharge it into the atmosphere. These are

mechanical pumps. They operate at high pressure but have

limited displacement, pressure, and range. Next are the blowers such as roots pumps. They operate

at low pressure but have a large displacement. Principally,

blowers only push the gases and are not pumps. For low pressure in the vacuum range ( $10^{-3}$  -  $10^{-9}$  torr) dif

fusion and molecular pumps are used. They trap gas mole

cules physically or mechanically and push them ahead. These

pumps are displacement or drag pumps and can operate at

low pressures only. They always require a backing pump.  $Q = P \frac{dS}{dt} = \frac{dn}{dt} V$  For higher vacuum ( $10^{-5}$  -  $10^{-12}$ ) there are many devices

such as ion pumps, and cryo pumps. They are based on various

phenomena displayed by gas molecules at very low pressures. A brief review of the operating principles and character

istics of some vacuum pumps for use in ( $760$  to  $10^{-5}$ ) torr range

are discussed in this section. For more information about

these and other pumps refer to special books in the Bibliogra

phy, and manufacturers' literature.

### 12.3.1 Positive Displacement Pump

These are purely mechanical pumps. They create a vacuum inside a "cylinder" by a moving piston; gas is drawn in, compressed, and discharged into the atmosphere at a slightly

higher pressure than the atmospheric one. Thus their discharge

is always at atmospheric pressure. Hence these pumps are at the exit end of a vacuum pumping system. The discharge pres

sure is regulated by a spring loaded valve. Though theoretically, the intake pressure of these pumps

is supposed to be zero, in actuality, it is of the order of  $10^{-1}$  to

$10^{-3}$

-

3 torr due to leakage and other problems. Commercial positive displacement pumps have a rotary

piston. Two common designs are shown in Figure 12.1(A) and

Figure 12.1(B). The rotary pump in Figure 12.1(A) has a solid shaft rotat

ing eccentrically in the cylinder. A ring with a sliding ring is

mounted on the shaft and carries a slider. The contact point

between the cylinder and the ring on one side and the slider on

the other side divides the cylinder into two cavities. The slider

also acts as the gas inlet. The gas is received, compressed, and

discharged through the spring-loaded valve. As the gas heats

during compression, the pump is cooled by oil around it.

There

may be additional cooling pipes to circulate the water and cool

the oil. Figure 12.1(B) shows a sliding vane pump. The eccentric

cally rotating shaft has a diametrical slot carrying two radial

vanes. The inner ends of the vanes are connected by springs.

The outer ends rotate in contact with the inner surface of the

cylinder. Thus, two rotating cavities are created. Air or gas is received via the intake port, compressed, and discharged through

the spring-loaded valve. This pump is also oil-immersed. Both pumps usually have a gas ballast facility. Through

this, the measured quantity of air is injected into the compressed gas a little before discharge. If the gas being pumped has moisture or other condens

able vapors, these condense during compression due to reduction in volume and vapor saturation. The condensed vapors

create corrosion problems and also contaminate the oil. The injected ballast prevents condensation, allowing vapors to

escape with the exhaust. Gas ballasts raise the ultimate (minimum vacuum) pressure and thus reduce the pump capacity.

Limitations and Advantages of Mechanical Pumps 1. These are the only available pumps that can discharge the pumped air

directly into the atmosphere. 2. They have a constant pumping speed from atmospheric to about 1.0 torr pressure.

At lower pressures the speed drops rapidly, as shown in Figure 12.2. The lowest attainable pressure is about  $10^{-3}$  torr. 3. At lower pressures, the pump cannot compress the

At lower pressures the speed drops rapidly, as shown in Figure 12.2. The lowest attainable pressure is about  $10^{-3}$  torr. 3. At lower pressures, the pump cannot compress the



drawn gas to discharge (atmospheric) pressure and thus pumping is effectively stopped. 4. Due to rubbing between various parts there is considerable friction and wear. Hence, the pump speed is limited to about 350-700 r/m. 5. The gas ballast solves the condensation problem but raises the ultimate pressure. 6. The ultimate vacuum (pressure) can be lowered by using two pumps in tandem. A large capacity fore pump draws air from the vessel, compresses it, and discharges it into the backing pump which compresses it still further and discharges it into the atmosphere. The pumping characteristics of this arrangement are shown in Figure 12.2. 7. These pumps are excellent for roughening, i.e., quickly reducing the pressure to about  $1-10^{-2}$  torr so that other pumps (blower or diffusion) can take over for further pressure reduction. 8. Pumping capacities available are 10 to 1000 m<sup>3</sup> /h.

### 12.3.2 Roots Pump

This pump is a blower and is mainly used as a booster or enhancer for positive displacement pumps. The construction of a typical roots pump is shown in

Figure 12.3. Two counter-rotating rotors of approximately the

same shape, rotate in a housing. The clearance between the rotors, and the rotors and housing is 75 to 300 microns. This

clearance makes the rotation free (without contact) and hence

Figure 12.2 Pressure-speed characteristics of a typical positive

displacement pump. F i g u r e 1 2 . 3 R o o t s p u m p ( B l o w e r ) .

r/m is possible without friction. The inlet and outlet ports are

as shown. The outlet port is smaller than the inlet. During rotation, gas molecules are trapped between the

casing and the rotors and are transported toward the outlet.

There is not much compression, hence, this is a low-pressure

high-discharge pump. The pumping speed ( l /sec) depends on the lobe-casing volume and r/m. Some blowers have spiral shaped rotors. The compression ratio is about 1:10. Blowers with a capacity of 500-2000 m<sup>3</sup> /h are available. Due to the peculiar manner of trapping and pushing the

gas, a blower has different speeds for different gases. Typical pressure-speed characteristics of roots blowers

are shown in Figure 12.4. Some peculiarities of roots pumps: 1. A roots pump is really a blower. It pushes a high volume of gas at low pressure. Hence, it cannot be used at high pressures, i.e., the initial stages (roughening) of vacuum. 2. The maximum permissible pressure difference is 50-60 torr. If connected to discharge directly to the atmosphere (760 torr) it draws out a large volume initially. When the pressure in the vessel drops, it cannot develop enough output pressure and develops considerable heat. It is therefore necessary to back the blower with a rotary pump. 3. Such a combination of the blower and rotary pump can be used in the 760-10<sup>-3</sup> to 10<sup>-4</sup> torr range. The ultimate pressure is about 5 × 10<sup>-5</sup> torr. 4. The pumping speed depends on the r/m. The usually available speeds are 1000-3000 r/m but higher speeds are possible. 5. As there is considerable heat generation, the blowers have elaborate water cooling. 6. The size (rating) of the backing pump has an effect on the blower performance. Usually, a backing pump of about 1/10 pumping speed is used. 7. Blowers have a maximum pumping speed of about 0.05-0.1 torr, below which the speed drops. At 0.001-0.01 torr the speed is 50-75% of the maximum. 8. Blowers are free from oil contamination. 9. Positive displacement pumps are useful up to a maximum of 1.0 torr while diffusion pumps can pump efficiently from 10<sup>-2</sup> to 10<sup>-3</sup> torr. Hence, there is a gap between 1 and 10<sup>-2</sup> torr when a diffusion pump is connected directly to a rotary pump. Blowers are very useful to cover this gap. Hence, diffusion pumpblower-rotary pump is the best combination.

Figure 12.4 Pressure-speed characteristics of a roots pump.

10. Roots pumps can be connected in series or parallel to handle large amounts of gases containing condensable vapors.

### 12.3.3 Diffusion Pumps

In these pumps the air molecules coming from the vessel are caught up or trapped by a stream of vapor and are carried along with it toward the exit (foreline). In principle, the pump

ing action is similar to an ejector pump. The pumping medium, i.e., the vapor is produced at the

base of the pump by boiling a suitable fluid. As the vapor carry

ing the gas descends, it condenses on the cold walls of the pump

casing. The trapped air or gas molecules are released near the

lower end and are drawn out by the suction from the foreline. The vapor stream is produced in two or more stages by

the jet assembly over the top of the boiler (Figure 12.5).

Figure 12.5 Oil diffusion pump. A further enhancement in pumping is obtained by an

ejector or booster in the foreline. The pump walls and fore line are cooled by water. This cooling removes the heat of condensation and reduces the back streaming of vapor to

the vacuum vessel. The pumping speed is determined by the area (diame

ter) of the inlet and what is called the H o factor. This factor is

0.3-0.5. For air the pumping speed  $S$  is given by  $S \approx 2D^2 \cdot Dif$

fusion pumps with diameters of 25-1200 mm and air pumping

capacities from 10-100,000 (l/sec) are available. In earlier days mercury was used as the pumping fluid. It

is still used in small laboratory-type pumps. Presently, all

commercial pumps use synthetic oils and are sometimes

called "oil diffusion pumps." Among many desirable properties

of the pumping oils, the following are most important: 1. Low vapor pressure 2. High molecular weight 3. Low latent heat of evaporation 4. Noncorrosive and nontoxic A number of synthetic oils are developed. They are pro

prietary formulations based on hydrocarbons, silicones, and

other organic groups. The boiler has a sealed electric heater. The oils may consist of a single compound or a number of

compounds. In the latter case a "fractionating pump" is used.

Different components vaporize at different pressures and rise

to different jets. Noteworthy points about diffusion pumps

1. Pumping characteristics of a typical diffusion pump (P-S curve) is shown in Figure 12.6. The figure shown is typical for pumping air. Note that at pressures higher than  $10^{-3}$  torr, the speed drops down, and somewhere between  $10^{-2}$  -  $5 \times 10^{-3}$  it becomes practically zero. For pressures lower than  $10^{-3}$  the speed is constant up to about  $10^{-7}$  torr.
2. The maximum constant speed depends on the inlet size (dia D). Theoretically, there is no lower limit. In practical pumps, the ultimate or blank off pressure is about  $10^{-9}$  torr. The ultimate pressure depends on the back-streaming of oil from the pump to the vacuum vessel. The back-streaming is avoided by using a trap or baffle at the inlet to condense the oil vapor.
3. Diffusion pumps draw the gas with the vapor stream. The drawn gas is collected in the foreline where it acquires a higher pressure, which is called the "foreline pressure."
4. As the diffusion pump can pump only from about  $10^{-3}$  torr, it is necessary to connect a mechanical pump between it and the atmosphere. This mechanical pump must have an intake pressure lower than the foreline pressure. If it is not so, air collected in the foreline cannot be drawn out.
5. Thus, there is a maximum limit to the foreline pressure. If pressure higher than this limit is reached, it will start affecting the pumping speed at the inlet of the diffusion pump. This limiting pressure is called the "fore pressure tolerance" of the diffusion pump. This is an important

design parameter when selecting

Figure 12.6 Typical P-S curve for a diffusion pump. the diffusion-mechanical pump combination. The fore pressure tolerance (at full load) is given by the manufacturer. It is usually between  $15$  and  $50 \times 10^{-2}$  torr. The backing pump must have an intake pressure lesser by at least one order. 6. Diffusion pumps require water-cooling. The water requirement as well as the power required for the oil boiler is given by the manufacturer. Diffusion pumps have no moving parts. They do have oil which may produce back-streaming vapors. 7. As the diffusion pumps can start pumping only at about  $10^{-3}$  torr, it is best to use a roughening pump directly connected to the vessel. The diffusion pump is connected in line after the vessel pressure reaches  $10^{-3}$  torr, as shown in Figure 12.6. 8. When the vessel is very large ( $\geq 5 \text{ m}^3$ ) a number of diffusion pumps are connected in parallel to achieve a quick pump-down time. Diffusion pumps are mounted vertically. They are con

nected to the vessel via a short, large-diameter pipe or an elbow. The conductance of these must be taken into account when deciding the pump capacity. These connections often contain a baffle or trap to condense oil vapors back streaming into the vessel. The traps and baffles also have a conductance which significantly lowers the available pumping capacity.

#### 12.3.4 Molecular Pumps

These pumps are based on the phenomenon of molecular impact in a low pressure regime. If a gas molecule strikes a surface, it rebounds in all possible directions that have no relation to the angle of incidence. At low pressures ( $< 10^{-3}$  torr) the molecules have a large mean free path. Thus, when molecules strike a surface, some of them rebound in a direction

which is more or less parallel to the surface. If the surface is

moving at a fast speed, these molecules will be carried along

the surface, i.e., they will be pumped away. There are two main types of molecular pumps based on

this principle. The molecular drag pump uses a high speed rotating disk and a spiral pumping path. These pumps have many mechanical problems and are now superseded by turbo

molecular pumps. A typical turbo molecular pump is shown in Figure 12.7(A).

It consists of several pairs of stator and rotor blades with angular grooves on their edges as shown in Figure 12.7(B).

There are several configurations of this. The one shown in the

figure has a central inlet with blade pairs on both sides, an

outlet on one side, and an integral motor. The clearance

between the blades is about 1.0 mm (much smaller than the

mean free path  $\sim 10^{-2}$ – $10^{-3}$  m). The rotor blades are rotated at 10,000–20,000 r/m by the

motor. Gas molecules are drawn in the stator grooves and

pumped by the rotor grooves. The number of grooves, their angle,

the clearance, and the speed are critical design factors. Higher

r/m increases the pumping speed and limitation appears to be

the bearings. Pumps with capacities 1000–20,000 l/min are

available. The pressure-speed characteristics of turbo molecular

pumps are shown in Figure 12.8. The pump starts pumping from about  $10^{-2}$  torr and has a

constant speed down to  $10^{-9}$  torr. It is thus necessary to use a

backing pump. Turbo molecular pumps are oil free and are not affected by

condensable vapors. They are better but costlier than diffusion

pumps. Because of their very high speed they have mechanical problems. These pumps are mainly used in electron beam machines, solid state processing, etc., where vacuum higher than  $10^{-5}$  torr is required.

## 12.4 PUMPING SYSTEM DESIGN

### 12.4.1 Selection of Vacuum Pumps

After reviewing various aspects of vacuum pumps and vacuum systems we can now tackle the main problem of the

designer, i.e., how to select the pump or pumps required to achieve the given vacuum pressure in the given time and to

sustain it during the given process time. The various available pumps have their characteristic

pressure range and pumping speed. They give optimum performance within these limits. The following are the general operational ranges of these pumps: The ultimate pressure of these pumps is usually much less than the ranges given above.

Figure 12.8 Pressure-speed characteristics of a turbo molecular

pump.

Mechanical pumps  $760-0.1$  torr

Roots pumps  $760-10^{-3}$  torr With input/output pressure difference of about 40 torr.

Diffusion pumps  $10^{-2}-10^{-7}$  torr

Turbo molecular pumps  $10^{-3}-10^{-9}$  torr with cryogenic trap or  $10^{-3}-10^{-7}$  without traps. This tells us that with the exception of low vacuum of

about  $10^{-1}$  or  $10^{-2}$  torr, no one pump can produce higher vacuum.

Another important point is that only mechanical, i.e., positive displacement pumps, can pump out at atmospheric pressure. Hence, in virtually all the pump combinations, the mechanical pump will be the output or the last pump and will have to be used as the backing pump. Consider the pumping speeds (l/min). Following are the

typical speeds of various available pumps: This shows that pumps applicable for low pressures have

high pumping speeds. This is fortuitous because at low pressures the volume of gas to be pumped out is large ( $PV = \text{Constant}$ ).

However, the pumps will have to be matched to their fore and backing pumps and the conductance of the piping. The output of the mechanical pump can be increased by

connecting two or more pumps in series (compound) or in parallel. After we reach a pressure of about  $10^{-3}$  torr there will be

outgassing from the vessel, its furniture, and components.

The gas load due to outgassing can be estimated from the available data but such estimates could be very different



(generally lower) than the actual one. The pumps should be capable of taking up this load and maintaining the vacuum. Outgassing generally subsides or comes to equilibrium with pumping. On further evacuation there will be an additional gas

load due to the process. This load will arise at the process pressure

and temperature, and can be estimated with reasonable accuracy. The process gas load will continue throughout the process time. The pumps will have to take up this load and maintain pressure at the level required by the process.

Mechanical pumps 400-40,000 l/min

Roots pumps 10,000-50,000 l/min

Diffusion pumps 3,600-540,000 l/min

Turbo molecular

pumps 3,000-25,000 l/min The normal leaks and permeation will also pose an additional

load but this is generally negligible compared to the outgassing and process loads. The piping used to connect the vessel and the pumps will

have conductance, as discussed in Section 12.5. The size

(diameter) of the plumbing will be dictated by the flange size

of the chosen pump. The length will depend on the system layout but should be the shortest possible. For a given pipe or fitting, or their combination, the conductance will depend on

the flow regime, i.e., turbulent, viscous, intermediate, or

molecular. Conductance will lower the actual speed available at the input and, hence, will influence the pump selection.

#### 12.4.2 Calculation of Pumping Speed

In the beginning, the whole system will be at atmospheric pressure ( $P_A$ ). We will assume that the system contains dry air. The first stage of evacuation will be roughening, i.e., to

bring down the pressure ( $P_R$ ) to  $10^{-1}$  torr. A positive displacement pump is used for this. If a time  $t$  min is assumed for

roughening, (12.1)

roughening, (12.1)

where  $V$  = Effective volume of system (l)

$S_P$  = Pumping rate (l/min) This is modified by using the factor  $K$  for different pressure

ranges as given in Table 12.1. We can also use this equation to determine the roughening pump speed  $S_P$ , for pump

selection. If the air contains substantial moisture, a gas ballast will

have to be used, which will raise the  $P_R$  from  $10^{-1}$  to 1.0 torr.

The roughening pressure can be lowered to  $10^{-2}$  and a higher

pumping speed can be obtained by using a compound pump.  $t = \frac{V}{S_P} \ln \frac{P_A}{P_R}$  or  $2.3 \log \frac{P_A}{P_R}$  The roughening pressure can be lowered further to  $10^{-3}$

to  $10^{-4}$  torr by using a roots pump as the forepump and backing

it by a rotary displacement pump. In the absence of outgassing loads, the combination will have a fairly flat P-S

characteristic. If outgassing exists, the blower capacity (S B )

will have to be matched to the gas load. A roots blower can also be used to evacuate directly to

the atmosphere at the very beginning of evacuation. Blowers

have large pumping speeds and can bring down the system

pressure to about  $10^{-10}$  torr in a very short time. After this,

the blower could be backed by a mechanical pump. This

arrangement will require elaborate plumbing. Experience has shown that a blower works best when

backed by a mechanical pump having a capacity of about  $1/10$

of the blower. For pressures below  $10^{-3}$  torr to about  $10^{-8}$  torr, a diffu

sion pump will have to be backed by a blower or a mechanical

pump. It is in this pressure range that most of the outgassing

load will appear. The pump capacity should be adequate to

remove the outgassing, process gas load, and maintain the

system pressure at the desired level. Diffusion pumps have

very large pumping speeds. To realize these speeds the fore

line pressure will have to be at least one order below the

maximum tolerable value. This will be supplied by the man

ufacturer. It will be about 0.18-0.30 torr. The gas flow in the

pressure range of  $10^{-3}$  -  $10^{-8}$  torr is in the molecular or inter

mediate range and the conductance of pipes and traps in the

suction line must be considered. TABLE 12.1 Pressure Range,

Torr Service Factor K 760-100 1.0 110-10  
1.25  $10^{-5} \times 10^{-1}$  1.5  $5 \times 10^{-1}$   $2 \times 10^{-4}$  2.0  $5 \times$   
 $10^{-2}$   $2 \times 10^{-4}$  4.0 Instead of a diffusion pump we can use  
a turbo molecular pump

in the  $10^{-3}$  -  $10^{-10}$  torr pressure range. The pump has a  
flat S-P char

acteristic and is oil-free. However, it has a low capacity  
and is

expensive; hence, it is mainly used for special  
applications. It will

have to be backed by a blower or a mechanical pump. The  
layout of a typical vacuum system will be as shown

in Figure 12.9. The example that follows will make clear  
the process of

pump selection.

### 12.5 CONDUCTANCE AND PUMPING SPEED

The vacuum chamber and the pumps are connected by pipes.

There may be one or more pumps, and the connecting plumb

ing may be quite complex. Besides the pipes, it contains  
many

other components such as traps, baffles, valves, and  
elbows. The plumbing offers considerable resistance to the  
flow of

gases and affects the pumping speeds. In vacuum parlance  
this

resistance is called "conductance (C)." Each component has  
its

own conductance. The total conductance of a system is calcu

lated by considering their way of connection, i.e., in  
series, par

allel, etc. This is similar to the calculation of the  
resistance of

an electric circuit containing a number of resistors.

Consider a simple system as shown in Figure 12.9(A),

where the vessel and pump are connected by a large, straight,

circular pipe. Let  $S_P$  = Pumping speed of pump l/sec  $S_E$  = Effective speed available at the vessel The two speeds are different because of the conductance

offered by the intermediate pipe which consumes some part of

the pump speed. Thus,  $S_P$  and  $S_E$  are related by the following

relation: (12.2)

where  $C$  is the conductance of the pipe. The units for  $C$  are the

same as  $S_E$  and  $S_P$ , i.e., l/sec or  $m^3$ /sec, etc.   
1 1 S C S E P = + F i g u r e 1 2 . 9 T y p i c a l v a c u u m l i n e . If there are more pipes connected in series, the total con

ductance  $C$  is given by (12.3)

where  $C_1$ ,  $C_2$ ,  $C_3$ , etc., are the conductances of individual pipes.

If these are arranged in parallel, (12.4) Let us consider the relative magnitudes of the quantities

in Equation (12.3) and Equation (12.4). If  $C = S_P$  then  $S_E = S_P/2$ , hence, only 50% of the pump

speed is available at the vessel. If  $C < S_P$  lesser speed is avail

able. If  $C > S_P$  more speed is available. Thus, at  $C = 4 S_P$  80%

of the pump speed is available at the vessel. Note that 100% is

never available at the vessel. (Unless of course when  $1/C = 0$ !).

This also shows that if the conductance  $C$  is limiting, there is

no use increasing the pump speed; i.e., a larger pump is not

necessarily a solution. The conductance of a pipe depends on the flow regime,

i.e., viscous, intermediate, or molecular (see Table 12.2) and on

the geometry of the pipe. For a circular pipe of length  $L$  (cm) and diameter  $D$  (cm)

carrying air at  $20^\circ\text{C}$  at average pressure  $P$  (torr), the conductance  $C$  is given by (12.5) The above equation applies for viscous regime only. As

seen before viscous regime exists if  $P \times D \leq 0.5$  torr cm. If  $P \times D$  is between 0.5 and 0.005 the flow is in intermediate range and the conductance is given by (12.6) Here, the first term is the conductance due to viscous

flow, and the second term is for the molecular flow.  $C = C_1 + C_2 + \dots$

$C_1 = \frac{1}{8} \frac{P D^3 L}{P D L} = \frac{1}{8} \frac{D^2 L}{P}$

$C_2 = \frac{1}{4} \frac{D^3 L}{P D L} = \frac{1}{4} \frac{D^2 L}{P}$

For the molecular flow, where  $P \times D \leq 0.005$  the conductance for air at  $20^\circ\text{C}$  is given by (12.7) This equation shows that in the molecular flow regime

the conductance is independent of pressure. If  $L \leq D$ , the above equation can be written as (12.8)

TABLE 12.2 Characteristics of Vacuum Systems Vacuum

Characteristics Low Medium High Ultrahigh

Pressure Range

(typical) mm

Hg (torr) 760-1 1-10<sup>-3</sup> 10<sup>-3</sup>-10<sup>-7</sup> 10<sup>-7</sup>-10<sup>-10</sup>

Number of molecules per

molecules per

molecules per

$m^3 (N_A V = 10^{26}) \cdot 10^{25} \cdot 10^{22} \cdot 10^{22} \cdot 10^{19} \cdot 10^{19}$   
and less

Mean free path

(cm). For air

at 20°C

(approximate

for comparison only.)  $4.5 \times 10^{-3}$   $0.45 \cdot 4.5 \times 10^{-3}$   
 $4.5 \times 10^{-4}$   $4.5 \times 10^{-6}$

Viscosity and

thermal

conductivity Independent of Pressure Depends on mean free path/ Mol.dia. Directly proportional to pressure Both phenomenon practically absent

Gas Flow\* Viscous Mixed Molecular Molecular to no flow at very low pressure

\* This also depends on the pressure, viscosity and vessel, pipe dimensions.  $C D L s = 12 \cdot 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 1$   $C D s = 9 \cdot 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 1$   
Equation 12.8 can also be modified to take into account

the end corrections which arise due to the entry aperture

between the vessel and the tube. Equation (12.7) and Equation (12.8) also show that to have

a large conductance, i.e., more pump speed at the vessel, the

connecting pipe should have a large diameter and short length. Besides the simple tube connection between the pump

and the vessel, another connection commonly used is a right

angle elbow. The conductance of an elbow can be calculated

from the above equations by substituting  $D'$  for  $D$  where

where  $L_{ax}$  = Axial length (cm) and  $D$  = Diameter (cm) of the elbow For more complex shapes and their conductance, consult

## 12.6 BAFFLES AND TRAPS

These are devices to remove condensable vapors from the air or gas being pumped out. There are several sources of con

densable vapors in a vacuum system. The air always contains moisture or humidity. At the

right combination of pressure and temperature, the gas is saturated and the vapor and moisture are condensed. Various materials used in the construction of the vessel

give out large amounts of water vapor at the outgassing stage.

It is reported that the outgassing "gas" is about 75% water vapor. The charge to be processed in vacuum also has absorbed

water vapor which is released at the right pressure. In a high or medium vacuum system the outgoing vapor enters the diffusion pump and condenses there along with the pumping fluid (usually oil). The oil gets contaminated, thus affecting the pumping rate. Elastomers and seals give out hydrocarbon vapors during

evacuation. These vapors also condense and contaminate the oil. What is discussed above is the source of vapors going out

from the vessel. One other source of vapor goes in to the system. This is the oil vapor escaping from the pump inlet into

the vessel. If the pumping system contains only a roots pump or a

mechanical pump, the outgoing vapors can be removed by a gas ballast arrangement. The condensing vapors lower the



ultimate pressure of the pump. Roots pumps are unaffected by the presence of vapors. The diffusion pumps are the type mostly affected by the presence of vapors. It is therefore necessary to remove the vapors by condensation before they enter the diffusion pump. Traps and baffles are such devices. They are located between the vessel and the fore pump. Technically, baffles provide a zigzag path for the vapor so that it meets cold surfaces and condenses before entering the pump. Traps are intentionally cooled or refrigerated to condense the vapors. Both devices condense the vapors and the condensate remains in the device. It re-evaporates upon heating and enters the system. To minimize this, there is a baffle valve which isolates the vessel from the pump. The arrangement of these and some typical baffle and trap designs are shown in Figure 12.10. Traps are cooled by water circulation, dry ice, refrigeration, liquid nitrogen, or air depending upon the cooling requirements. The condensate, either liquid or solid, is removed (emptied) when the system is off. Alternately, the vapors are absorbed by a suitable molecular absorbant (e.g., activated charcoal or other synthetic material). Theoretical calculations of the baffle and trap conductance is tedious. It is best to rely on manufacturers' data.

## 12.7 OUTGASSING

All materials, when exposed to low pressure, release gases.

This phenomenon is called "outgassing." Either during manufacturing or in subsequent processing and handling, materials

absorb gases such as water vapor, hydrogen, and oxygen. Figure 12.10 Vacuum foreline with traps.

These gases are linked up with the chemical structure of the materials. If they are bonded with the surface layers, only then are

they said to be "absorbed." On the other hand, they may be dissolved in the material and evenly distributed throughout.

Some

gases may be occluded in the surface defects (e.g., cracks) and

some may be in the form of small bubbles. There are many other

forms or mechanisms of absorption of gases by material sur

faces. These are subjects of study in surface sciences. It should

be remembered that these gases are not present because of sur

face uncleanliness. Otherwise, clean surfaces would also have

absorbed gases (in fact, more). In the construction of vacuum

furnaces and accessories we use metals, polymers and rubbers

(gaskets), glasses (view ports), ceramics, etc., and all these

materials have absorbed gases mainly on their surfaces. On exposure to vacuum (and temperature) the absorbed

gases are evolved. The pressure at which a material outgasses, and the rate of evolution varies from material to material, its processing history, and prior exposures. An elevated temperature (baking) helps outgassing. At elevated temperature the material outgasses at a higher pressure and at a faster rate. One common fact about all materials is that the rate of outgassing first increases and then diminishes with time. Most materials outgas in  $10^{-2}$  -  $10^{-4}$  torr pressure range. Evolution of absorbed gases is called "desorption." Organic materials like elastomers and polymers give out additional gases due to chemical decomposition. They are generally blends of several chemicals with the main polymer. These chemicals evaporate or decompose at low pressure and elevated temperature. On exposure to vacuum for a prolonged time, many materials release gases due to diffusion from internal layers or permeation of atmospheric gases through them. All vacuum systems show leaks. These may arise from manufacturing defects (e.g., faulty welding, improper seal, design, etc.) or due to aging with use or need of maintenance. In a well-designed and maintained system, these leaks are taken care of by the pumping system. Outgassing of many construction materials is extensively studied. Outgassing rates are measured in throughput per unit area, i.e., torr  $\times$  liters/sec  $\times$  cm<sup>2</sup> and are

published in

specialist literature. A few are quoted below. The above quoted rates are for comparison only. Actual

rates depend on surface condition and time in vacuum. Many metals contain lead, sulfur, zinc, cadmium, and

other low melting point impurities or alloying elements. These

vaporize on exposure to vacuum. In general, alloys like stain

less steel, mild steel, etc., have very high vapor pressure and

do not add to outgassing. Surface dirt, grease on the vessel, or charge outgas and

further load the system. In conclusion, outgassing poses an unpredictable and

uncontrollable problem in the design of pumping systems. At

about  $10^{-2}$  the outgassing produces a gas load and raises the

vessel pressure. The pumping system should be capable of

handling this additional gas load at low pressure and stabiliz

ing the vacuum to the desired level in reasonable time. As compared to outgassing, vaporization and diffusion

evolve vapors and gases at a very slow rate and the evolution

continues at a constant rate for a very long (many days) time.

Hence, they pose a permanent, steady but predictable prob

lem. After outgassing, the pumping system comes to equilib

rium with vaporization. This puts a limit on the ultimate (long

term) vacuum that can be obtained in a given system. The

outgassing problem can be reduced by heating the

vessel during the roughening stage. This is called "bake out."

A temperature of 200-400°C is used. Due to the combination of heating and vacuum, the exposed surfaces outgas quickly.

This reduces the outgassing load at lower pressure and the required vacuum is produced in a shorter time. Bake out is  
Stainless steel, aluminum  $1.5 \times 10^{-9}$  Mild steel  $5 \times 10^{-7}$   
Teflon  $5 \times 10^{-6}$  Neoprene  $2 \times 10^{-4}$  Porcelain  $6 \times 10^{-7}$

limited to surface outgassing (desorption) only. Surfaces once

baked out will reabsorb gases if exposed to the environment.

#### EXAMPLE 12.1

A furnace having 2.0 m<sup>3</sup> volume is to be evacuated to  $10^{-3}$  torr.

Initially the furnace is filled with dry air at atmospheric pressure

and 300 K.

Assume: 1. Constant furnace temperature (300 K) 2. Air contains 21.0% O<sub>2</sub> and 79% N<sub>2</sub> by volume 3. R = 287 J/kg K

Now determine: 1. The quantity of air initially present 2. The air remaining in the furnace after evacuation to  $10^{-3}$  torr

Initially,  $V = 2.0 \text{ m}^3$ ,  $P_1 = 10^5 \text{ Pa}$ ,  $T = 27^\circ\text{C}$   
Finally,  $V = 2.0 \text{ m}^3$ ,  $P_2 = 10 \text{ torr} = 1.333 \times 10^3 \text{ Pa}$ ,  
 $T = 27^\circ\text{C}$  Repeating the calculations for  $P_3 = 1.0 \text{ torr}$   
and  $P_4 = 10^{-3} \text{ torr}$ , we get  $P_1 V = m_1 R T_1$   $10^5 \times 2 = m_1 \times 287 \times 300$   
 $m_1 = \frac{10^5 \times 2}{287 \times 300} = 232.56 \text{ kg}$   
 $P_2 V = m_2 R T_2$   $1.333 \times 10^3 \times 2 = m_2 \times 287 \times 300$   
 $m_2 = \frac{1.333 \times 10^3 \times 2}{287 \times 300} = 3.03 \text{ kg}$   
 $P_3 V = m_3 R T_3$   $1.0 \times 10^3 \times 2 = m_3 \times 287 \times 300$   
 $m_3 = \frac{1.0 \times 10^3 \times 2}{287 \times 300} = 2.28 \text{ kg}$   
 $P_4 V = m_4 R T_4$   $10^{-3} \times 2 = m_4 \times 287 \times 300$   
 $m_4 = \frac{10^{-3} \times 2}{287 \times 300} = 2.28 \times 10^{-6} \text{ kg}$   
Comparing  $m_1$  and  $m_2$ , the air removed in bringing the

pressure from 1 atmosphere to  $1/750 \text{ atm}$  is

i.e., 98.7% of air is pumped out in the first stage leaving behind only 1.3%. Subsequent stages will progressively pump out more air

but the remainder will never be zero!

## 12.8 VACUUM PUMPING (PRESSURE-TIME RELATIONS)

Consider the evacuation of a vessel having a volume  $V \text{ m}^3$  by

a pump with a pumping speed  $S \text{ m}^3/\text{sec}$ .

Assume 1. There are no leaks or gas evolution (outgassing)  
2. The pump speed is constant at all pressures  
3. The resistance (conductance) of the connecting pipes and fitting is negligible  
Gas pumped out in time  $dt$  at a vessel pressure  $p$   $= V dp/dt$  Gas removed by pump  $= S p$  giving  
(12.9) If in time  $t$  the pressure goes down from  $P_1$  to  $P_2$ , the

above equation on integration gives (12.10) (12.11) The above equation is applicable between 760-1.0 torr. In

this range the gas flow is viscous and the outgassing is negligible.

Mechanical pumps (rotary vane, blowers) used in this

range show a fairly constant pumping speed.  $2.3256 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3/2956 \text{ kg} = 7.87 \text{ m}^3/\text{kg}$   
 $\int_{P_1}^{P_2} \frac{dp}{p} = -\frac{S}{V} \int_0^t dt$   $\ln \frac{P_2}{P_1} = -\frac{S}{V} t$   
 $t = \frac{V}{S} \ln \frac{P_1}{P_2}$   
The useful application range of this equation can be

extended by including a factor  $K$  so that (12.11) The factor  $K$  is empirical and is usually supplied by the

pump manufacturer as a service factor. Typical service factors

are given in Table 12.1. Mechanical pumps cannot be used at pressures below

1.0 torr as their pumping speed drops rapidly to zero at about

$10^{-2}$  torr. The range can be extended to  $10^{-4}$  by using two

pumps in series such as a blower followed by a rotary pump

or two blowers in series. Equation (12.11) can be rearranged to the form (12.12)

which will show that the pressure is reduced by a logarithmic

decay and is zero only after infinite time, irrespective of the

limitations of the pump. The design problem for vacuum systems is how to reduce

the pressure to a desired value in a reasonable pump down

time and hold it there for the required process time. Equation (12.12) is used when the pumping speed (S) is

constant, i.e., the S-P characteristic is flat. Outside the con

stant S range, the curve slopes and we will have to use an

equation based on constant throughput Q, ( $Q = P \times S$ ). (12.13) If this part of the characteristic curve is not a straight

line, it is divided into small segments. The equation is sepa

rately applied to each segment and the time values are added

to get the total time for evacuation in that range. The use of these equations will be clear from the solution

of the following problems. When the outgassing load is constant in the molecular

range and when there are no process gases, we can use the t  
$$K \frac{V}{S} \ln \frac{P_1}{P_2} = 2.303 \log \frac{P_1}{P_2} = \frac{2.303 V}{S} \log \frac{P_1}{P_2} = - \frac{2.303 V}{S} \log \frac{P_2}{P_1}$$

pumping speeds demanded by the required throughput for

time calculation.

#### EXAMPLES

Data

Vessel-mild steel cylindrical vessel 1.2 m diameter and 1.5 m

height. Initially the vessel contains dry air at 760 mm pressure and 30°C temperature. Volume - 1.7 m<sup>3</sup> (1700 l)  
Surface Area - 5.65 m<sup>2</sup> = 5.65 × 10<sup>4</sup> cm<sup>2</sup> Outgassing rate (0-10h) Mild steel - 4.2 × 10<sup>-7</sup> torr l/sec cm<sup>2</sup>  
Elastomer - 2 × 10<sup>-4</sup> torr l/sec cm<sup>2</sup> Glass - 1.16 × 10<sup>-9</sup> torr l/sec cm<sup>2</sup> Gasket (elastomer) - length 0.4 m-400 cm  
Exposed thickness - 0.15 cm

#### EXAMPLE 12.2

The above discussed vessel is to be evacuated to 1.0 torr in about 15 min. Calculate the pumping speed and select a suitable pump. Disregard outgassing and the conductance of the pipe between the pump and the vessel.

#### Solution

The pump has to discharge at atmospheric pressure, hence, a positive displacement or mechanical pump is required. The data mention "dry" air but some amount of moisture (at least

humidity) is expected. Mechanical pumps can handle the moisture by introducing ballast. The pumping capacity will be reduced

by ballast. Ultimate pressure without ballast will be about 10<sup>-2</sup> torr. With gas ballast it will be about 10<sup>-1</sup> torr (single

stage). The vessel pressure required is 1.0 torr. Hence moisture,

if present, will not be a problem. The pumping speed-pressure characteristics (Figure 12.11)

show a constant speed in the range 760-1.0 torr. Hence, we can



apply Equation (12.1), i.e.,  $V = 1700 \text{ l}$ ,  $t = 15 \text{ min} = 900 \text{ sec}$ ,  $P_1 = 760 \text{ torr}$ ,  $P_2 = 1.0 \text{ torr}$  Substituting The pressure range is on the high side, hence,  $K = 1.1$  Nearest available pumps are (from manufacturers' data) Calculating evacuation times for both  $t = \frac{V}{S} \frac{P_1}{P_2} \frac{K}{\ln \frac{P_1}{P_2}}$  in or  $\log_{10} \frac{P_1}{P_2} = \frac{2.3}{S} \frac{V}{t} \frac{K}{\ln \frac{P_1}{P_2}}$   $\times \times = 1700 \frac{15 \cdot 60}{2.3} \frac{1.1}{1.288} \frac{1}{13.76} \dots / \text{sec} \text{ l or} = 826 / \text{min}$  Single stage /min Two stage /min  $S = 750$   $1000 \text{ l l t t} = \times \times \times = \times \times \times = 1700 \frac{750}{2.3} \frac{1.1}{1.288} \frac{1}{16.5} = 1700 \frac{1000}{2.3} \frac{1.1}{1.288} \frac{1}{12.4} \dots \text{ min min}$  Figure 12.1 Typical pumping characteristics of vacuum pumps. Hence, any of these pumps can be used. The single stage

750 l/min will be cheaper.

EXAMPLE 12.3

The same vessel is connected to the pump by a pipe having diameter 30 mm and length 1.2 m. Calculate the conductance of the pipe and the pump capacity if the evacuation from 760 to 1.0 torr is to be done in 15 min.

Solution

In the given pressure range (760-1.0 torr), the gas flow will be

molecular. Let us check this. For molecular flow  $D \times P > 5 \times 10^{-1} \text{ cm} \cdot \text{torr}$

Hence, the molecular flow is confirmed. The conductance in this range is given by  $l = \text{length} = 120 \text{ cm}$  If a pump of capacity  $P$  is chosen the effective speed  $P_E$

is given by

Substituting  $D = 3 \text{ cm}$ ,  $P = 760 \text{ torr}$ ,  $l = 120 \text{ cm}$ ,  $C_D = \frac{1}{3} \times 184 \frac{\text{l}}{\text{min}} = 61.3 \text{ l/min}$   $\times = \times 184 \frac{3 \cdot 380}{120} \frac{1}{4.72} \frac{1}{10.4} \dots / \text{sec} \text{ l} = 111 \text{ l/min}$   $P_E = 11000 \frac{1}{4.72} \frac{1}{10.4} P_E = \dots$ . The second term on LHS is very small and can be

neglected. Hence, the pumping speed is unaffected by the pipe

conductance.

#### EXAMPLE 12.4

The same vessel is to be evacuated to  $10^{-3}$  torr in about 15 min.

Choose a suitable pump. Calculate assuming there is no outgassing.

#### Solution

We have a choice of pumps in the given situation. 1. Rotary piston pumps with an ultimate pressure about  $10^{-4}$  torr are available. These are two-stage pumps. 2. We can use a roots blower backed by a mechanical pump. The rotary pump shows a constant speed (flat) behavior

from 760 to about  $10^{-2}$  torr and a constant throughput from

$10^{-2}$  to  $10^{-4}$  torr. Time required for lowering pressure from 760 to  $10^{-2}$  torr is In this range  $K = 2$ . Arbitrarily, we assume a pumping

time 10 (< 15) min Nearest pump available is a two-stage rotary pump

with a pumping capacity 3333 l/min and an ultimate pres

sure  $10^{-4}$  torr.  $t = \frac{K V S}{P_1 P_2} \log \frac{P_1}{P_2} = \frac{2 \times 3 \times 1 \times 2}{0.1700 \times 10^{-2} \times 3816} \log \frac{760}{10^{-2}} = 23$  min For finding out the amount of time to pump from  $10^{-2}$  to

$10^{-3}$  torr, we can use the constant throughput equation  $6 \times 10^{-6}$  min This shows that the pressure reduction from  $10^{-2}$  to  $10^{-3}$

is practically instantaneous. This is so because there is practi

cally no gas load (outgassing). We can reduce the pump capacity by allowing 15 min for

pressure reduction from 760 to  $10^{-2}$  torr. This gives  $S = 2544$  l/min Nearest available pump is 1660 l/min. For this, the pump

ing time is 23 min Let us consider a combination of a roots pump backed by

a mechanical pump. Assume 1. The mechanical pump evacuates down from 760 to  $10^{-3}$  torr. 2. The roots pump evacuates between  $10^{-3}$  and  $10^{-5}$  torr.  $t = \frac{V}{Q} = \frac{P_1 - P_2}{S} = \frac{1}{S} \left( \frac{V}{P_2} - \frac{V}{P_1} \right)$   $t = \frac{1}{1700} \left( \frac{1600}{2} - \frac{760}{3} \right) = 0.88$  min. 3. The maximum permissible pressure difference between the inlet and outlet of the roots pump is 60 torr. We use a mechanical pump to reduce pressure from 760

to  $10^{-3}$  torr in 10 min. Nearest pump is a single-stage rotary piston pump of

1000 l/min capacity and  $2 \times 10^{-2}$  ultimate pressure. The calculated pumping time is  $t = 0.8$  min

#### EXAMPLE 12.5

The vessel in the previous problems is to be evacuated to  $10^{-5}$

torr and maintained at that pressure for one hour. The pumps to be used are a diffusion pump, backed by a

roots pump, backed by a mechanical pump, which exhausts

into the atmosphere. The vessel and its components start outgassing at about

$10^{-3}$  torr and contains for 1 h to  $10^{-5}$  torr at a constant rate. The diffusion pump is connected to the vessel via: 1. A straight pipe 50.0 cm long. 2. A right angle elbow having each leg 25.0 cm long. 3. A baffled elbow with molecular transmission probability 0.35.

Now determine: 1. Pumps required. 2. Time to reach  $10^{-5}$  torr from  $10^{-3}$  torr.

#### Solution

As the evacuation process involves outgassing at pressures

$10^{-3}$  and lower, we have to design the pumping requirement

starting with the diffusion pump.  $S = \frac{1}{1700} \left( \frac{1600}{2} - \frac{760}{3} \right) = 0.88$  minl. The surface area of the vessel is  $5.65 \times 10^4$  cm<sup>2</sup> and the

outgassing rate is  $4.2 \times 10^{-7}$  torr l/sec . cm<sup>2</sup> .

Outgassing load

from vessel is (I) The elastomer area Elastomer outgassing rate is  $2 \times 10^{-4}$  torr  $\cdot$  l/sec $\cdot$ cm<sup>2</sup>. Hence,

the outgassing load from elastomer is (II) Total outgassing rate is (III) The outgassing starts at  $10^{-3}$  torr and continues to  $10^{-5}$  torr. The gas load at  $10^{-3}$  torr (IV) At  $10^{-5}$  torr it is (V)  $4.2 \times 10^5$  65  $10^2$  37  $10^7$  4 3 . . .  $\times \times \times = \times \cdot - -$  torr /sec1 =  $\times = \times =$  length exposed surface  $400 \cdot 0.15 \cdot 60$  cm<sup>2</sup> =  $\times \times = \times \cdot - -$  2  $10^6$  12 0  $10^4$  3 . torr /sec1 =  $+ \times = \times \cdot - -$  ( . ) . 2 3 12  $10^4$  3  $10^3$  3 torr /sec1 =  $\times = - -$  14 3  $10^4$  10 14 3 3 3 . . /sec1 =  $\times = \times - -$  14 3  $10^4$  10 14 3  $10^3$  3 2 . . /l sec The conductance of the elbow-trap will lower the pump

ing speed of the pump. Let us choose a diffusion pump with a capacity (P C ),

$2 \times 14.3 \times 10^2$  P C  $30 \times 10^2$  l/sec Manufacturers' literature shows an oil diffusion pump

having a capacity 3000 l/sec at  $10^{-5}$  torr. It has three stages

and an inlet diameter 250 mm. Mean free path of air at pressure P is Hence, at  $10^{-5}$  torr,  $\lambda = 4.86/10^{-5}$  =  $4.86 \times 10^5$  cm at  $10^{-4}$  torr,  $\lambda = 4.86/10^{-4}$  =  $4.86 \times 10^4$  cm at  $10^{-3}$  torr,  $\lambda = 4.86/10^{-3}$  =  $4.86 \times 10^3$  cm The ratio  $D/\lambda$  for various pressures is at  $10^{-5}$  torr,  $D/\lambda = 4.86/10^{-5} = 4.86 \times 10^5$  cm at  $10^{-4}$  torr,  $D/\lambda = 4.86/10^{-4} = 4.86 \times 10^4$  cm at  $10^{-3}$  torr,  $D/\lambda = 4.86/10^{-3} = 4.86 \times 10^3$  cm Hence, the flow will be molecular throughout. If the diffusion pump is connected to the vessel by a cir

cular pipe 250 mm dia. and (say) 500 mm long pipe, the con

ductance is given by  $C = 12.1 \times D^3 /L$  Substituting,  $l = 4$  86. /P cm  $C = \times = 12 \cdot 1 \cdot 25^3 / 500$  3781 3 . / /l sec The effective pumping speed P is given by Actual required speed is 1430 l/sec Hence the chosen diffusion pump is adequate. We can,

however, choose a slightly smaller pump. The introduction of the pipe has reduced the chosen

capacity by  $1673/3000 \sim 56\%$  Let us consider a plain right-angle elbow connecting the

pump and the vessel. The conductance of the elbow is given by

where  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are the lengths of each leg of the elbow and  $D$

is the diameter (both in cm). Assume that each leg is 25.0 cm long,  $D = 25.0$  cm. Substituting Thus, the pumping speed with elbow is short of the required

speed 1470 l/sec and we will have to modify the elbow, or choose

a larger pump, or do away with the slightly reduced capacity. Consider now an elbow with a baffle. This is a component

of a complex shape and we will use the probabilistic method.  $C_{DLE} = C_D \times \frac{L_1 + L_2}{D} = 3.64 \times \frac{25 + 25}{25} = 14.56$  l/sec. The molecular conductance of a given passage  $C$  is obtained

from

where  $C_D$  = Conductance of aperture with an opening of area equal to that of the given passage =  $3.64 (T/M)^{1/2}$ .  $A$  = Absolute temperature (K)  $M$  = Molecular weight of gas ( $\text{g}\cdot\text{mol}^{-1}$ )  $P_r$  = Transmission probability  $P_r$  is calculated and published in special books. Assume  $T = (273 + 30) = 303$  K  $M = 28.98 \sim 29.0$  for air ( $\text{g}\cdot\text{mol}^{-1}$ )  $A = \pi \times (25/2)^2 = 490$   $C_D = 3.64 \times (303/28.98)^{1/2} \times 490 = 2018$  l/sec. The probability  $P_r$  for a trapped elbow is about 0.35 (This

value is taken from manufacturers' literature). The conductance of the baffle elbow is  $C_{DLE} = C_D \times P_r = 2018 \times 0.35 = 706$  l/sec. The pump speed with this elbow is  $1470 - 706 = 764$  l/sec. This capacity is less than the minimum required speed,

1473. Hence, a larger pump is required when using a baffle/elbow.  $C_{DLE} = C_D \times P_r = 706 \times 0.35 = 247$  l/sec. The molecular conductance of a given passage  $C$  is obtained

combination. Next available pumps have 4000 and 5500 l/sec

speed. The above calculations will have to be repeated to check

their suitability.

## 12.9 CALCULATION OF PUMPING TIME

For determining the pumping time from  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-5}$  torr, we

will assume that the pump chosen has sufficient capacity to handle the required throughput through the connecting pipes, valves, baffles, etc. It is estimated that the volume of the pump and connect

ing piping is of the order of the volume of the vessel. This

shows that the total pumping volume is  $1700 \times 2 \approx 3000$  l. The calculated outgassing load is  $14.3 \times 10^{-3}$  torr · l/sec. At  $10^{-5}$  torr the speed is 1430 l/sec, similarly at  $10^{-4}$  torr

it is 143 l/sec and at  $10^{-3}$  torr it is 14 l/sec. If we plot the required speed against the pressure on log × log

plot, we get a straight line showing a speed decreasing with

increasing pressure. The usual pumping time equation

can be applied if we split the pressure range ( $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-5}$  torr)

into suitable steps. The smaller the chosen range, the more

accurate will be the time estimate. Let us split the pressure range as follows: 1.  $10^{-3}$  -  $5 \times 10^{-4}$  torr Average speed 37 l /sec 2.  $5 \times 10^{-4}$  -  $10^{-4}$  torr Average speed 87 l /sec 3.  $10^{-4}$  -  $5 \times 10^{-5}$  torr Average speed 457 l /sec 4.  $5 \times 10^{-5}$  -  $10^{-5}$  torr Average speed 1000 l /sec Applying the equation to first range  $t = \frac{V}{S} \ln \frac{P_1}{P_2}$   $t = \frac{3000}{37} \ln \frac{10^{-3}}{5 \times 10^{-4}} = 56.2$  sec Similarly Total time = 120.3 sec, say 2.0 min. Thus the time to pump from  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-5}$  torr is about 2 min

as calculated. We may apply a service factor of about 5 so that

the total time is about 10 min. Note: There are other methods of calculating the time

more accurately. However, for a preliminary estimate, the above given method is adequate. The service factor is mainly dependent on the pump combination, conductance of plumbing, and experience.

#### EXAMPLE 12.6

The same vessel as in the previous problems is evacuated from

atmospheric to  $10^{-5}$  torr pressure by a diffusion pump  $30 \times 10^2$

l/sec with an effective speed  $12 \times 10^2$  l/sec. The critical backing pressure (fore pressure tolerance) for

this pump is 0.35 torr. Now determine: 1. The backing pump(s) required 2. The time required

#### Solution

The outgassing load from  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-5}$  torr ( as calculated in the

previous example) is  $14.3 \times 10^{-3}$  torr ·l/sec. The diffusion pump has a speed of  $30 \times 10^2$  l/sec. The max

imum throughput of diffusion pumps is generally at  $10^{-3}$  torr. The maximum throughput of the chosen diffusion pump

will be  $3000 \times 10^{-3} = 3.0$  torr ·l/sec The maximum fore pressure tolerance of this pump is 0.3

torr. Discharge at this pressure is  $3/0.3 = 10$  l/sec or 600 l/min.  $t = \frac{14.3 \times 10^{-3} \text{ torr} \cdot \text{l/sec}}{10 \text{ l/sec}} = 1.43 \text{ sec}$  The backing pump chosen should have a capacity larger

than 600 l/min at 0.3 torr. Let the required capacity be 700 to 800 l/min. If we choose a positive displacement pump (mechanical

pump) the pumping capacity of medium pumps is limited to

about 300-400 l/min at 0.3 torr and rapidly increases at

higher pressures exceeding 0.3 torr. Thus, a mechanical pump

alone is not suitable. If we are required to use the gas ballast

the speed decreases still further. We will have to back the diffusion pump by a roots blower

or booster. This booster will further have to be backed by a

mechanical pump. The final choice is to use a blower to reduce the pressure

from  $10^{-10}$  -  $10^{-3}$  torr and a mechanical pump in the  $10^{-7}$  -  $10^{-6}$  torr

range. Manufacturers' literature shows a roots pump having a

capacity 45 l/sec at 0.3 torr which reduces to about 40 l/sec

at  $10^{-2}$  torr. Hence it has an adequate backing capacity. More

over, its capacity (speed) at  $10^{-1}$  torr is also 35-45 l/sec. The throughput of blower at  $10^{-1}$  -  $10^{-2}$  torr is  $8 \times 40$  to  $10 \times 40$ ,

i.e., 320-400 torr l/sec. Literature shows both a sliding vane and a rotary piston

pump with speeds of 350-370 l/min. These are single or dou

ble stage pumps. We choose a sliding vane pump having a

speed 2500 l/min or 41.6 l/sec at  $10^{-1}$  to  $10^{-2}$  torr, and an ul

imate pressure  $10^{-2}$  torr. The final choice of pumps is  $10^{-5}$  -  $10^{-3}$  torr, diffusion pump 3000 l/sec  $10^{-3}$  -  $10^{-1}$  torr, roots pump 45 l/sec  $10^{-7}$  -  $10^{-6}$  torr, mechanical pump 41 l/sec The time to evacuate from  $10^{-1}$  to  $10^{-2}$  torr is  $t = 1.5 \times 2.3 \times 1700 \times 45 \times 760 \times 10^{-2.76} = \dots \log \text{ sec}$  Time for reducing pressure from  $10^{-1}$  -  $10^{-3}$  torr Total time to reach  $10^{-3}$  torr from  $10^{-1}$  torr Pumping from  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-5}$  is achieved by the diffusion pump

which has a flat pressure speed characteristic showing constant

speed. The time required is (as estimated in the previous exam



ple) 5-10 min. Hence, time for pumping from atmospheric pressure to

$10^{-5}$  torr is = 23-28 min or about 30 min (1/2 h)

#### 12.10 MEASUREMENT OF VACUUM

Gauges used for the measurement of low pressures are different

from those used for normal pressures. Ordinary Bourdon tube gauges can be used from 760 to 0.5 torr, which is only the begin

ning of the vacuum range. Just as in the case of pumps, there is

no one gauge useful for vacuum measurement at all ranges.

Every gauge has its applicable pressure range. In many

instances more than one gauge is used to cover different pressure

ranges. There are three main types used in the  $760-10^{-5}$  range.

1. Mechanical Gauges:  $1.0-10^{-3}$  torr

2. Conductivity Gauges:  $1.0-10^{-4}$  torr

3. Ionization Gauges:  $10^{-3}-10^{-9}$  torr The only gauge which directly measures the vacuum pres

sure is the MacLeod gauge. In this gauge, a gas sample of

known volume, from the vacuum system, is isolated and com

pressed to a known volume. The difference in the pressure is

measured on a liquid (mercury) column. MacLeod gauges can  
 $t \ 2 \ 3 \ 1 \ 5 \ 2 \ 3 \ 1700 \ 45 \ 10 \ 10 \ 780 = \times \times = - \ . \ . \ \log \ sec = +$   
 $= + = \approx t \ 1 \ 2 \ 276 \ 780 \ 1056 \ sec \ 18 \ min.$

be used from  $10$  to  $10^{-6}$  torr. However, the instrument requires

manual operation and is intermittent. It cannot be used for

industrial applications. However, because it gives absolute pressure measurement, it is used for the calibration of other gauges.

Hence, the MacLeod gauge is not discussed further.

12.10.1 Mechanical Gauges

#### 12.10.1 Mechanical Gauges

This type of gauge is similar to the aneroid barometer. It contains a metal box or capsule with a very thin diaphragm on one side. The diaphragm is connected with fine linkage to a pointer. The capsule is evacuated to very low pressure ( $\sim 10^{-8}$  torr). It is enclosed in a chamber (see Figure 12.12)

which is open to the vacuum. Thus, the diaphragm is subjected to the vacuum pressure of the system from the outside and to its own vacuum from the inside. This pressure differential causes the diaphragm to deflect proportionally. The deflection is amplified mechanically by the linkage and exhibited by the pointer.

Figure 12.12 Mechanical and electro-mechanical vacuum gauge. The linkage is replaced by a sensor and an electronic system in some designs. Diaphragm gauges can be used in the range  $10^{-1}$  -  $10^{-4}$  torr.

Due to their all-metal construction they can be baked to  $180^\circ\text{C}$

for outgassing. These are simple and rugged devices independent of atmospheric pressure, and are sensitive. They are affected by temperature and aging. With electronic sensing, they can be used for an extended range up to  $10^{-8}$  torr and

remote control.

### 12.10.2 Conductivity Gauges

Thermal conductivity of a gas is a function of its density, i.e.,

pressure in the  $1.0 \cdot 10^{-5}$  torr pressure range. In gases, thermal

conduction takes place because of the impact of molecules

with the hot body (or heat source). As the pressure decreases,

the number of molecules in a given volume decreases and

their mean free path increases. This reduces the number of

impacts and, hence, the conductivity (Figure 12.13(A)). Conductivity gauges are based on the indirect measure

ment of conductivity of a hot filament placed in vacuum. There

are two major types of conductivity gauges. 1. Thermocouple Gauge The construction of a thermocouple gauge is shown in Figure 12.13(B). A filament suspended at the ends is heated by an electric current. The filament is made of platinum or nickel alloy. A chromel constantan or similar base metal thermocouple made from thin wire is welded to the filament. The emf of the thermocouple depends on the filament temperature, which in turn depends on thermal conductivity (i.e., heat transfer by conduction). The measuring circuit contains the cold junction compensation. The envelope of filament and thermocouple is open to vacuum. As the pressure decreases, the filament temperature increases and is measured on an indicator calibrated in pressure.

The useful range of a thermocouple gauge is  $1.0 \cdot 10^{-4}$  torr depending on the design. It is rugged and gives continuous readings. Electrical variations in the filament current or aging affects the accuracy of the gauge. 2. Resistance or Pirani Gauge In construction, the Pirani gauge is similar to the thermocouple gauge except that the envelope contains only the filament, as shown in Figure 12.13(C). The filament is heated at a constant voltage. The change in conductivity due to vacuum, is reflected in the change in

resistance. By using a Wheatstone bridge the resistance is measured and interpreted in pressure. A similar compensating resistance is used in the adjacent leg of the bridge. Recent designs use a thermistor instead of the filament. The general useful range of the Pirani gauge is  $1.0 \cdot 10^{-4}$  torr, which in some designs is extended to about  $10^{-6}$  torr. This is a rugged instrument giving continuous reading (with a self-balancing bridge). Readings are affected by contamination with vapors.

Figure 12.13 Thermal conductivity vacuum gauge.

### 12.10.3 Ionization Gauge

If an ionizing particle such as electron or proton strikes a gas

molecule, the latter is ionized. A positive ion and electrons are

produced. These products can be collected on oppositely charged

electrodes (cathode, anode). The resulting current will be pro

portional to the number of ions, which in turn, is proportional to

the pressure. This proportionality is generally nonlinear. In construction, ionization gauges are similar to electronic

valves or vacuum tubes with one end open to the vacuum. The

principle of ionization gauges is shown Figure 12.14(A). There are many variations in the design. It is not possi

ble to discuss all of these. Moreover, many designs incorpo

rate some method of shaping the interelectrode field to

enhance the capture of ions and develop a better current.

Most of the advanced gauges are used for measuring vacuum

of  $> 10^{-9}$  torr and hence are beyond the scope of our discus

sion. One such gauge is the Bayard Alpert gauge, which is

used in the ultra-high vacuum range ( $10^{-9}$  -  $10^{-12}$ ). Only two basic ionization gauges commonly used in the

$10^{-5}$  range are described. Ionization gauges remove molecules

from vacuum and hence, may act as a "pump" in the envelope.

#### Cold Cathode (Penning) Gauge

The construction of a Penning, or cold cathode, vacuum gauge is shown in Figure 12.14(B). The tube is essentially a diode. The central electrode has

a rectangular window shape and is positively charged to about

2 kV. Surrounding the anode is a rectangular (solid) cathode which acts as the electron generator. The envelope is open to

vacuum. On the outside is a permanent magnet with its field at a right angle. The combined electric and magnetic fields make the ion path very long, thus increasing ionization and the resulting current. The gauge is used in the range  $10^{-4}$  -  $10^{-7}$  torr. The current

produced is large enough and does not require amplification.

The response is nonlinear. Due to the large degree of ionization there is a risk of contamination and pumping. Compared

to other ionization gauges, Penning gauges are cheaper. They are F i g u r e 1 2 . 1 4 I o n i z a t i o n v a c u u m g a u g e .

bulky due to the permanent magnet. They are not very accurate but are good for general vacuum duty where high accuracy is not required.

#### Hot Cathode Gauge

These gauges are like a triode or tetrode with one or more grids generally placed between the anode and the cathode.

The cathode is hot, i.e., thermionic, and is made of thoriated

tungsten. It is heated to about 350-450°C. The general construction is shown in Figure 12.14(C). One end of the envelope

is open to vacuum. The hot filament releases electrons which ionize the gas

molecules. The grid is at a negative potential and collects the

positive ions. This creates a grid current. Similarly, the electrons are collected at the anode and create a current in the

anode circuit. In another version, the grid is positively charged and the surrounding cathode is negatively charged. The ratio of

the ion and electron currents is proportional to the pressure.

The measuring circuits are not shown but the electron current

is kept constant so that the ion current is directly proportional

to the pressure. The gauge has different responses to different

gases. Hot cathode gauges are useful in the  $10^{-3}$  -  $10^{-9}$  torr

range. There is a risk of filament burnout and contamination.

The gauge is not robust and generally not used for industrial

applications.

applications.

#### “Alphatron” Ionization Gauge

A radioactive material continuously emits  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  radiation. The  $\alpha$  radiation is helium nuclei with a charge of +2 and

is least penetrating. They ionize a gas molecule on impact. Alphatron vacuum gauges use a small mass of radioac

tive material as a source of  $\alpha$  radiation. Thus, compared to the

previously described ionization gauges, the Alphatron is a pas

sive device. The construction of an alphatron gauge is shown in

Figure 12.15(A). The radiation source is a radium salt rolled

into a gold foil. It has an activity of 1.5-100 micro curies and

so is quite safe. The source, in the form of a very small packet

or capsule, is kept on a tray attached to the anode chamber.

The cathode or ion collector is a wire centrally located and insulated from the cathode. One end of the envelope is open to

vacuum. A single chamber gauge can measure vacuum in the

$1.0 \cdot 10^{-4}$  range. Figure 12.15(B) shows a double chamber

gauge. The small chamber can measure in the 760-1.0 torr

range. Thus the gauge can be used for continuous vacuum

readings from the atmosphere to  $10^{-4}$  torr. Ionization produces a very small current ( $\sim 10^{-12}$  A) and

needs amplification. The output is linear. Though the gauge

head is cheap and rugged, the instrumentation makes this gauge expensive.

Choice and Installation of Gauges 1. In a vacuum system, gauges are located in all the lines connecting the vessel and the various pumps. 2. The actual gauge to be installed at a point should cover the pressure range expected in that line. Thus the

Figure 12.15 "Alphatron" ionization gauge. Figure 12.16 Vacuum, classification, gauges, and applications. pressure will be lowest in or near the vessel. It will be higher in the line between the pumps and highest at the outlet to the atmosphere. 3. If some process is to take place in the vessel, locating the gauge in the vessel is avoided to guard against spattering and contamination. This also reduces the connection through the wall and attendant leakage. 4. For a small pressure difference ( $1-10^{-1}$  torr) mechanical gauges are used. 5. A high vacuum gauge for a vessel is generally located in the pipe or elbow outside the vessel. 6. All gauge envelopes are miniature vacuum vessels and are affected by their own outgassing. 7. In large systems pressures are monitored and controlled from a central panel. This requires remote sensing gauges (ionization alphatron, thermocouple) and extensive instrumentation. There are many other gauges available for higher vac

uum ranges. These are not discussed here as they are beyond the arbitrarily chosen limit of  $10^{-5}$  torr for this book. Pressure-wise classification of vacuum, applicances, and gauges is shown in Figure 12.16.



## 14 14. Temperature Measurement

### 14.2 THERMOCOUPLE PYROMETERS

These pyrometers, invented long ago, still dominate the field of

temperature measurement. The basic principle behind thermo

couple is known as the Seebeck effect which states that, "In a

circuit made of two different metals, if one junction is kept at a

temperature  $t_1$ , and the other at a lower temperature  $t_2$  then an

e.m.f.  $E$  is created in the circuit (Figure 14.1(A)) which is pro

portional to the temperature difference ( $t_1 - t_2$ ), i.e.,  $E = K_s (t_1 - t_2)$  (14.2)

where  $K_s$  is the proportionality constant known as the Seebeck

coefficient. The junction at the higher temperature ( $t_1$ ) is called the

hot junction and the other junction at the lower temperature

is called the cold junction. A basic thermocouple pyrometer

operating on the Seebeck effect is shown in Figure 14.1(B).

Figure 14.1 A Seebeck effect . Two other effects are associated with the Seebeck effect. 1. Peltier effect states that the Seebeck effect is reversible. If in a circuit of two dissimilar metals a direct e.m.f. is impressed (say with a cell or battery) then one of the junctions becomes hot and the other cool. The Peltier effect is the principle on which thermo-electric refrigeration is based. At least up to now, these cooling devices cannot economically compete with mechanical refrigeration. They have their advantages and limited applications. 2. The Thompson effect states that if in a current carrying a conductor, two points are at dissimilar temperature, then heat is either evolved or absorbed by the conductor. The direction of heat reverses with the reversal

of the direction of the current. Both the Peltier and Thompson effects are of no use in

pyrometry and hence, are not discussed in detail. There are some practical corollaries which we can derive

from the above three laws of thermoelectricity.

Corollary 1:

A thermoelectric circuit made of the same material will not produce any e.m.f. even though the two junctions are at different

temperatures. The circuit must be made of two dissimilar metals.

Figure 14.1 B Thermocouple pyrometer.

Corollary 2:

If a circuit made of two dissimilar metals contains other conductors and if the junctions of these extra materials are at

same temperature, the thermoelectric e.m.f. produced will not be affected by the presence of the extra conductors. It will be

the function of the difference of hot and cold junction temperatures only.

Corollary 3:

Consider a circuit made in two parts from two dissimilar

metals. Let the hot and cold junction temperatures in the first

circuit be  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  and let those in the second circuit be  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  and

temperatures only.

T

. Also, let  $t_1 > t_2 > t_3$ . The e.m.f. produced in the two circuits will be  $E_1 = K_s (t_1 - t_2)$  and  $E_2 = K_s (t_2 - t_3)$ . If we now consider one circuit of the same metals with

junctions at  $t_1$  and  $t_3$  the e.m.f. produced will be (14.3)

Corollary 4:

In the Thomson heating and cooling of a conductor, both difference of temperature and a preestablished current are necessary. Only one condition cannot produce the effect.

#### 14.3 PROPERTY REQUIREMENTS OF THERMOCOUPLE MATERIALS 1.

The useful temperature range of a thermocouple should be a little less than their melting points. Like all metals, the thermocouple metals lose their mechanical rigidity at temperatures near melting. Generally, the alloys chosen can be used up to a temperature  $100-150^\circ\text{C}$  less than the melting temperature. If a thermocouple consists of two metals (or alloys), then the above criteria will apply with respect to the alloy with the lower melting point.  $E = K(t_1 - t_2)$ . The chosen thermocouple should produce a large e.m.f. in the temperature range. A very small e.m.f. is difficult to measure with consistent accuracy. 3. As far as possible, the relation between the e.m.f. and the temperature should be linear. Such linear e.m.f. can be easily measured on a simple voltmeter. With electronic circuits it is possible to linearize a nonlinear relation but these instruments are costly. 4. The e.m.f. temperature relation should be continuous, i.e., without any gaps or jumps. 5. The thermocouple metals must be resistant to the effects of the atmosphere in the measurement environment (oven, furnace, etc.) 6. The thermocouple is usually made from wires. The alloys should have sufficient workability for the production of wires. Similarly, it should be possible to make these alloys with accurate composition and purity. Impurities, if not controlled, will affect consistency and reliability.

#### 14.4 PRACTICAL THERMOCOUPLES

Considering the requirements of good thermocouple materials

discussed in the previous section, a number of thermocouples have been evolved and standardized. In earlier days the metals were manufactured by a few manufacturers. Hence they had proprietary names such as Chromel, Alumel, and Constantan. With the availability of ultra-purity constituent metals, sophisticated melting furnaces (e.g., vacuum induction melting), and fast and accurate analytical methods (e.g., spectrography), the number of manufacturers has increased. They have marketed similar thermocouples, differing only in some minor constituents. Previously, thermocouples were classified in two categories: "noble" and "base metal." This classification was based on constituents. Base metal couples were of metals or alloys such as iron, copper, manganese, nickel, and chromium. The noble metal couples were made from platinum and its alloys. Presently, all commercial thermocouples are classified by letter designation such as B, E, J, S, and T. This designation was suggested by ASTM and is now adopted all over the world. The designation does not depend on composition but by the  $E$  vs.  $t$  relation shown by the couple. Thus, even though the minor constituents are different, couples offering the same  $E$ ,  $t$  relation belong to the same class. Table 14.1 shows the classification of widely used commercial thermocouples and their useful temperature range. The

standardization of thermocouple wires is made by accurately determining the e.m.f.  $E$  and temperature " $t$ " relation. For this the reference or "cold" junction is kept at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . This reference junction temperature is internationally agreed upon.

Hence, all the  $E$  and  $t$  data are reported with the tacit understanding that the reference junction is at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The National Institute of Standards and Technology (U.S.) and manufacturers of metals have published such calibration data tables for all the standard thermocouples. The tables usually quote e.m.f. produced at every  $1.0^{\circ}\text{C}$  difference. The data are fit into a standardized relation such as (14.4) The values of constants  $a_0$ ,  $a_1$ , ..., or  $a_0'$ ,  $a_1'$ , etc., are also accurately determined so that any interpolation can be done from the numerical tables. The calibration is carried out by keeping the "measure ment" or "hot" junction in a pure metal whose solidification temperature is standardized. The couple is dipped in a crucible containing the metal. It is then heated to a higher temperature so that the metal gets liquified. It is then cooled so that the solidification takes place at a constant temperature. The e.m.f. produced is recorded as a standard output. There are internationally agreed primary and secondary calibration points. Primary points are the boiling point (B.P.) of  $\text{O}_2$ ,  $-182.97^{\circ}\text{C}$ , B.P. of water,  $+100^{\circ}\text{C}$ , solidification of silver and gold,

960.8°C

and 1063.0°C, respectively, etc. E a a t a t t a a E a E =  
+++ = ' + ' ' + + 0 0 0 0 0 1 3 2 0 1 2 2 L Lor TAB L  
E 1 4 . 1 C o m m o n T h e r m o c o u p l e s , C l a s s  
i f i c a t i o n , a n d T e m p e r a t u r e R a n g e N  
o . P o s i t i v e W i r e ( P ) N e g a t i v e W i r e ( N )  
T r a d i t i o n a l T y p e I n t e r n a t i o n a l  
D e s i g n a t i o n A S T M N o r m a l T e m p e r a t u  
r e R a n g e ° C O c c a s i o n a l U s e H i g h e s t T  
e m p e r a t u r e 1 . P t 7 0 R h 3 0 P t 9 4 R h 6 N o b  
l e B 8 7 1 - 1 7 0 5 1 7 5 0 2 . N i 9 0 C r 1 0 N i 4 5 C  
u 5 5 C o n s t a n t a n B a s e E 0 - 8 0 0 8 5 0 3 . F e  
N i 4 5 C u 5 5 C o n s t a n t a n B a s e J 0 - 7 0 0 7 6  
0 4 . N i 9 0 C r 1 0 N I C R O S Y L N i 9 5 M n 2 A l 2 S  
i 1 N I S I L B a s e K 0 - 1 2 0 0 1 2 6 0 5 . N i 8 4 . 5  
C r 1 4 S i 1 . 5 N i 9 5 . 5 S i 1 . 5 M n 0 . 4 B a s e N  
0 - 1 2 0 0 1 2 6 0 6 . P t 8 7 R h 1 3 P t N o b l e R 0 -  
1 5 0 0 1 7 0 0 7 . P t 9 0 R h 1 0 P t N o b l e S 0 - 1 4  
8 0 1 7 0 0 8 . C u N i 4 5 C u 5 5 B a s e T - 1 8 4 - + 3  
7 0 3 7 0 9 . W 9 5 R e 5 W 7 4 R e 2 6 - E x p e r i m e n  
t a l V a c u u m 1 0 0 0 - 2 7 0 0 2 8 0 0 1 0 . W W 7 4 R  
e 2 6 - E x p e r i m e n t a l V a c u u m 1 0 0 0 - 2 6 0  
0 2 8 0 0 1 1 . G r a p h i t e w i t h b o r o n d o p i n  
g G r a p h i t e - V a c u u m 2 0 0 0 2 0 0 0 S e c o n d a r y  
p o i n t s a r e s o l i d i f i c a t i o n t e m p e r a t u r e s o f m e r

cury, tin, aluminum, copper, nickel, tungsten, etc. Further details of thermocouple calibration are beyond

the scope of this book. Reference may be made to specialized

ships for standardized thermocouples is shown in Figure 14.2. It

can be seen that many thermocouples show a nonlinear rela

tion. This nonlinearity can be corrected by using an indicator

Figure 14.2 EMF-temperature relations for standard thermocouple.

with a specially ruled scale piecewise, or nowadays, electroni

cally carrying out a piecewise linearization. The hot junction of a thermocouple is made by twisting

the wires together to form a mechanical joint. This joint is

then welded to form an electrically homogeneous junction.

This welding is done to form a bead. The welding is a delicate

process, especially for thin wires. Precleaning and fluxing give

a sound joint.

#### 14.5 COLD JUNCTION COMPENSATION

The Seebeck effect, when applied to a standard thermocouple,

requires that the temperature of one of the junctions (cold

junction) must be kept constant. In an industrial environment or in any practical appli

cation, the cold junction is located outside and exposed to

atmospheric temperature. This temperature changes accord

ing to the time of the day, the season, and the surrounding

industrial environment. The standard calibration data for thermocouples are based

on the cold junction temperature maintained at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In laborato

ries this condition is satisfied by keeping the junction in a mix

ture of melting ice and water. It is not practical or feasible to

maintain the cold junction at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  in an industrial environment. Consider in the first instance that the cold junction be

kept at a constant nonzero temperature  $t_2$  with the hot junc

tion at a temperature  $t_1$ . The e.m.f. measured will be due to the

difference  $t_1 - t_2$ . The standard e.m.f. from the tables is based

on the difference  $t_1 - t_0$ . Thus, (14.5)

with the condition that  $(t_1 - t_0) > (t_1 - t_2)$ .  
Thus, the indicator

temperature will be less than the standard value by an

amount  $t_2 - t_0$ . In practice, the temperature  $t_2$   
(environmental tempera

ture) is not constant. Hence, the error  $t_2 - t_0$  is  
also variable.  $E_K(t) = E_K(t_s) + \frac{dE_K(t)}{dt} \Delta t$  (14.6)  
) ( ) 1 0 1 2 Devices or designs to remedy this source of  
error in temper

ature measurement are known as "cold junction  
compensation." A number of such compensation methods are  
available. 1. If the accuracy of measurement required is  
not high (say = 10 to 15°C) the simplest and cheapest  
method is to forward the indicator needle to the assumed  
environment temperature. This will automatically add the  
assumed constant temperature to the measured temperature.  
2. The indicator needle in some instruments is connected to  
a bimetallic spring. The spring expands or contracts on  
changes in environmental temperature. Thus, the needle  
moves forward or backward on the scale. This automatically  
compensates for the cold junction temperature. This method  
is better than the first method but still not accurate  
enough. 3. In some designs an artificial cold junction is  
kept in a miniature oven in the instrument. The temperature  
of this "oven" is kept higher than the maximum possible  
environmental temperature and is controlled by suitable  
circuits. This produces a constant error at all times. The  
required error voltage is automatically added to the  
measured voltage. 4. Some instruments use a thermistor in  
the thermocouple circuits. The resistance of the  
thermistor, and therefore the voltage, drop across it,  
changes with the environment temperature and compensates  
for the error. There are other sophisticated methods of  
compensation.

These are not discussed here. For the furnace designer it  
is necessary to keep in mind

two points. 1. For accurate temperature measurement some  
kind of cold junction compensation must be provided. 2. The  
compensation method to be selected will depend on the  
desired accuracy, reliability, and the cost.



## 14.6 COMPENSATING WIRES

Thermocouple wires are manufactured in two grades—standard and precision. Both grades are quite costly. In most of the industrial furnaces and ovens, the temper

ature indicator or the controller is situated on a control panel

which is at a considerable distance from the furnace. It is uneconomical to take the thermocouple wires over such distances. The thermocouple wires are terminated at the junction

box outside the furnace. From the junction box to the panel, other special but

cheaper wires called compensating cables are used. The temperature of the connection plate is generally in

the range of 50 to 150°C and the reference junction in the instrument is in the range of 60 to 80°C. The compensating wires are so chosen that they produce the same e.m.f. as the thermocouple wires in the temperature range of 150 to 50°C

so that no error results due to the termination of the thermo

couple wires at the junction box (see corollary three above). Compensation wires for different thermocouples are

standardized and color coded. The color codes are not interna

tionally standardized. In the U.S. standardization, which is followed in many

countries, the thermocouple wires have red jackets for all neg

ative wires (N) and different colors for positive wires (P), e.g.,

J, K, T, E, N thermocouple positive wires are white, yellow,

blue, purple, and orange colors. Extension or compensatory wires have different colors for positive and negative wires and the cable has usually a brown jacket. It is vital to observe the correct polarity when connecting compensating cables to the thermocouple. A wrong connection (e.g., +ve thermocouple to -ve compensating cable) will result in considerable error.

#### 14.7 CONSTRUCTION OF THERMOCOUPLES

Industrial thermocouples are constructed to withstand the rigors of the industrial environment for a long time. Bare thermocouples get corroded or oxidized by furnace gases and fail within a very short time. The thermocouple wires are insulated from each other by using twin bore ceramic insulators usually made of alumina or mullite. The assembly is then inserted in a ceramic sheath in the shape of a one-end-closed tube. Many materials are used for the sheaths. Some common sheath materials are given in Table 14.2. When choosing a sheath, the temperature, environment, porosity, and thermal fatigue must be considered. Metallic sheaths are also used either alone or as an outer cover for ceramic sheaths. If used alone, the hot junction is electrically insulated by a ceramic piece or powder. The assem

bled thermocouple can be up to 1 to 1.2 m long. At the other end, the thermocouple is connected to termi

nals in a junction box. From these terminals compensating

cables are taken out and connected to the indicator. The construction of a typical thermocouple is shown in

Figure 14.3. However, depending on the end use, many differ

ent designs are available. TABLE 14.2 Thermocouple Sheath Materials Sheath Material Maximum Temperature°C Carbon steel 550 Cast iron 700 Pure iron 700 18-8 Stainless steel 950 28 Cr stainless steel 1100 Chromel, Nichrome 1100 Incoloy, Inconel 1100 Fused silica 1050 Fire clay 1050 Silimanite, Mullite 1550 Silica, Alumina 1600 Silicon carbide 1650

#### 14.8 SELECTION OF THERMOCOUPLES

The following points should be considered when selecting a

thermocouple for a given application. 1. The normal temperature range and the maximum occasional temperature to which the thermocouple is to be used. This information will be useful in knowing which of the standard thermocouples are available for this range. 2. Operation of the furnace—continuous or batch type. If the latter is considered, what is the cycle time and how many batches are to be processed in a day or a week?

Figure 14.3 Construction of an industrial thermocouple. Thermocouples are prone to thermal fatigue. Their life is affected by the heating-cooling cycles. Base metal thermocouples of type E, J, K, N, and T are more affected than precious metal couples of B, N, R, and S. 3. The furnace atmosphere can be oxidizing, reducing, inert, or vacuum. The atmosphere to which different thermocouples can withstand are listed below. This shows that types J and T thermocouples can withstand both the oxidizing and reducing atmosphere, but their useful temperatures are only 760 and 370°C, respectively. Heat treatment furnaces generally have a reducing atmosphere and the temperatures are 800- 1200°C. For this application, the cheapest choice will be type K but this will have a limited life due to corrosion and aging. Type N is the next choice for higher temperatures. It will have a better stability (physical and thermoelectrical) than K but will be somewhat costlier. Type R and S (Pt-Pt, Rh) can be used in oxidizing and inert

atmospheres up to 1400°C while type B can be used to 1700°C under similar conditions. These thermocouples will have a long life but cannot be used in reducing (heat treatment, sintering, etc.) atmospheres. They are much more costly than the base metal types. Currently, there is a growing trend to avoid reducing atmospheres and use vacuum instead. Only B type thermocouples are suitable but they must be covered by a suitable impervious sheath and also by an outer metal sheath (if the temperature and atmosphere permits). 4. The response of a thermocouple to changes in temperature is also an important factor. A thermocouple will indicate the correct furnace or object temperature when it reaches that temperature. This is achieved by conduction of heat through the sheath and conduction Type Atmosphere K, E, N, R, S Oxidizing and inert J,T Oxidizing and reducing B Oxidizing, inert, and vacuum through the bead (not junction). Conduction is a slow process. The sheath is ceramic and has an inherently low conductivity. Additionally, if the thermocouple wires have a large diameter, they will take time to heat up. Thus a thermocouple has a slow response. It can be improved by using thinner sheaths and wires but this will be at the cost of service life and rigidity. Note that this response factor has nothing to do with the controller/indicator response. 5. Thermocouples and the related control system are important components of the total cost of the furnace. The total expected life of the system and the cost of repairs, replacements, and calibration in this period must be given consideration in costing. The relative initial cost of precious metal couples is much more than base metals but they give better service for a long time. 6. Small furnaces usually require only one thermocouple, strategically placed in the furnaces. Precision furnaces, though small, may require more thermocouples to maintain the required temperature near the charge. Larger and multizone furnaces also require more thermocouples than one.

## 14.9 RADIATION PYROMETRY

### 14.9.1 Principle of Radiation

A body at a temperature higher than its surrounding emanates

electromagnetic radiation. The intensity of this radiation is pro

portional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature of the

radiating body. This is the Stephen Boltzman's law of radiation. The radiation can be directly measured by using a sensor

or it can be compared to the radiation of a body of known temperature.

This is the principle of radiation pyrometry. There are several types of instruments incorporating radiation measurement.

One immediate advantage of this method is that there is no contact between the measuring instrument with the hot body, and at least in principle, the body and the instrument can be far apart as long as they "see" each other.

We will come across "radiation" in detail when we discuss heat transfer (Chapter 3). Here only relevant facts are reviewed. A hot body emits radiation all over the electromagnetic spectrum. The intensity of this radiation depends on the wavelength and the absolute temperature.

At a given temperature the total energy emitted at all wavelengths is given by the Stephen Boltzman Law: (14.6)

where  $E_T$  = Total energy emitted by unit surface ( $W/m^2$ )  
 $T$  = Absolute temperature of the emitting body (K)

$C_o$  = Stephen Boltzman constant ( $5.669 \times 10^{-8} W/m^2 \cdot K^4$ )

The total energy will be the area under the  $E_\lambda$  plot against wavelength  $\lambda$  for the given temperature  $T$  as shown in Figure 14.4. Note that the radiant energy is spread all over

Figure 14.4 Radiation intensity of a black body.  $E_C T T_o$

= ( ) 4 W/m<sup>2</sup>

the spectrum and the intensity is different for each wavelength. At the extreme ends, i.e., X-rays and far infrared and

radio wavelengths, the intensity is very low. Most of the energy

is between 0.5 to 10  $\mu\text{m}$  region. An enlarged portion of the  $E_\lambda$

against  $\lambda$  part of Figure 14.4 is shown in Figure 14.5 at vari

ous temperatures. The intensity  $E_\lambda$  at a given wavelength and temperature

is given by Planck's radiation law. (14.7)

where

$\lambda$  = Wavelength ( $\mu\text{m}$ )

T = Absolute temperature (K)

$C_1$  = Constant ( $3.69 \times 10^{-16} \text{ W/m}^2 \text{ K}^5$ )

$C_2$  = Constant ( $1.44 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m, K}$ )

$C_0$  = Stephen Boltzmann's constant Equation 14.6 and Equation 14.7 are for black body radi

ation. In practice we have to consider the emissivity  $\epsilon$  of the

radiating body. Hence the equations applied in practice are (14.8) and (14.9) Radiation pyrometers are based on Equation 14.8 and

Equation 14.9.

#### 14.9.2 Practical Problems

The application of Equation (14.8) and Equation (14.9) in practice raises several problems and puts limitations on radi

ation pyrometry. These are discussed below briefly. 1. The wavelength region having high intensity is between 0.1 to about 10  $\mu\text{m}$ . In this region, 0.1 to 0.4  $\mu\text{m}$  is the ultraviolet region, 0.4 to 0.7  $\mu\text{m}$  is the visible region, and 0.7  $\mu\text{m}$  onward is the infrared region as shown in Figure 14.6. As the temperature of interest increases, the radiation becomes stronger toward shorter wavelengths. Hence, the practically applicable region for all temperatures is limited to approximately 0.5 to 8  $\mu\text{m}$ , which lies in the visible (0.5-0.7  $\mu\text{m}$ ) and infrared (0.7 to 8.0  $\mu\text{m}$ ) region. 2. Any instrument built to sense the radiation will have to be enclosed to avoid dirt, dust, gases, etc., present in the industrial environment.

Figure 14.6 Transmission power of selected optical materials. Such an enclosed instrument will have to be provided with windows and other optical components through which it can "see" the radiating body. All the optical materials have their own characteristic transmissivity, i.e., they allow only particular wavelengths to pass through with sufficient intensity. For other wavelengths, they are opaque. Transmission power for many optical materials for various wavelengths is shown in Figure 14.6. It can be seen that ordinary glasses (crown glass, quartz, pyrex, ruby, etc.) have good transmission in ultraviolet and the visible region, but are opaque to infrared. Thus, glass windows are of no use at wavelengths higher than 2.5  $\mu\text{m}$ . Barium fluoride and zinc sulphide windows have only about 60-80% transmission in the infrared and visible region. Calcium fluoride has good overall transmission. The last three materials can hardly be called glasses and their optical forms are very costly. Thus, the spectral region that can be seen gets limited by the window and the optical material chosen. 3. Radiation pyrometers will require a sensor which will sense the incident radiation and generate a measurable signal (usually electrical voltage). Radiation pyrometers traditionally used thermal detectors as sensors. Thermal detectors are usually thermopiles made of a number of thin gauge thermocouples connected in series. Their hot junctions form the radiation sensing surface. This face is coated black to form a black body. Thermopiles can detect signals (radiation) of all wavelengths and are ideal. However, they depend on being heated by radiation, and hence depend on heat transfer and are therefore slow. Further, their signal is very low (Figure 14.7(A)) and they

require cold junction compensation. A number of semiconductor sensors are developed which depend on the quantum effect of incident radiation to generate a signal. They are based on materials like silicon, lead sulphide, indium antimonide, etc. (Figure 14.7(A)). Their response is practically instantaneous but it is selective to wavelength. A "good" signal is obtained over a narrow band. Thus, silicon is suitable only around 0.8 to 0.9  $\mu\text{m}$  and lead sulphide around 1.0 to 2.0  $\mu\text{m}$ . Thus, the sensor used in an instrument also limits the wavelengths that can be sensed.

4. Radiation pyrometers do not require contact with the radiating body, hence there is a distance (sometimes considerable) between the two. The medium inbetween is industrial atmosphere laden with dust, smoke and gases such as  $\text{CO}_2$ , water vapor, and reaction products. The dust particles scatter the radiation passing through them.  $\text{CO}_2$  and water vapor selectively absorb radiation as shown in Figure 14.7(B). Measurement of the radiation in the absorption bands should therefore be avoided. This again narrows the spectrum region of sensing. The absorption by these gases also depends on their concentration (partial pressure) in the air and the distance (optical path) between the object and the pyrometer.

5. It was mentioned when discussing the principles of radiation that the intensity of radiation of a nonblack body depends on its emissivity. Thus, for the same temperature there are two bodies with different temperature readings. The emissivity is a function of the surface condition, the wavelength, and temperature. Thus, radiation pyrometers will require some kind of emissivity correction. Many times, data available on emissivity are sufficient. The above problems reduce the universality of radiation

pyrometers. In practically all situations the pyrometer will

have to be selected and tuned to the problem. In real situations the placement of the sensing head with

respect to the object is also to be assessed carefully to avoid

background and external radiation affecting the incident

beam.

#### 14.10 DISAPPEARING FILAMENT PYROMETER



The tungsten filament of an electric bulb is a radiator. The intensity of radiation depends on the current flowing through it. The maximum temperature at the rated voltage is about 2800 to 3000°C. The minimum visible radiation is at 600°C. Hence we can obtain the radiation between 600 to 2800°C by changing the current. The disappearing filament pyrometer uses the tungsten filament as a radiation source. Its radiation is compared with the radiation from the object. The object radiation is obtained in the background. The filament is in the foreground when seen through the eyepiece. By varying the current with a rheostat, the intensity of the filament radiation is so adjusted that at some current the filament disappears against the background. The intensity of the background and the filament is then equal. The ammeter in the lamp circuits is calibrated in °C. Hence the temperature of the object is read on the ammeter. The construction of a disappearing filament pyrometer is shown in Figure 14.8. The whole instrument is built in the shape of a gun. A switch in the handle puts the lamp on when pressed. The handle also contains batteries. The ammeter is usually located at the back near the eyepiece. Note the focusing optics and the set of filters. The latter are to adjust for the shift of

$E T - \lambda$  graph with increasing temperature and the changes in

emissivity. The following points are noteworthy about this instrument

ment: 1. It is very simple, portable, and easy to operate. 2. It operates in the visible region. 3. Personal error may arise due to defective eyesight, color blindness, etc. 4. Like other radiation pyrometers, this pyrometer also does not require contact with the body and hence is useful for melting furnaces, etc. Figure 14.8 Disappearing filament pyrometer. 5. The response is not quick, as the operator has to adjust the rheostat. 6. The measurements are not continuous. 7. It cannot be directly used for objects, such as the sun.

#### 14.11 RADIATION PYROMETERS

The construction of a typical radiation pyrometer is shown in

Figure 14.9. It generally consists of two parts – the sensing

head and the electronic part. The sensing head is a sealed box

and contains all the optics for sensing and sighting. The box

has a window of a suitable optical material through which the

radiation beam enters. There are suitable filters and diaphragms to condition the beam which is then separated into

two parts. The central part is reflected by a mirror and taken

to the sighting optics. Through this beam, the instrument is

focused on the target or radiating body. The surrounding beam is reflected and focused on the

detector by a pair of concave convex mirrors. The signal, which

is created at the detector, is carried by a cable to the electronics

part. Here the signal is amplified. Again, control adjusts the

signal for emissivity. The response of the detector is nonlinear

and it is linearized and conditioned and fed to the indicator/

controller/recorder. The indicator is usually digital. The detector is thermal or semiconductor type. The con

struction of a thermal detector is shown in Figure 14.10.

This detector requires a cold junction compensating device

which is situated in the sensor box near the detector. In this

type, the sighting optics can be situated directly behind the

sensor as its center is open. The thermocouples used are of

type K or N, i.e., base metal (e.g., chromel-alumel). They are

made of very thin wires and their hot junctions are black

ened to simulate a black body. Eight to ten thermocouples

are situated radially and connected in series. This sensor

can sense all the wavelengths passing through the windows

(usually glass or quartz). Semiconductor sensors have a response time of 0.01-

0.025 sec. Depending upon the optics chosen, they can sense  
F i g u r e 1 4 . 9 M o n o c h r o m a t i c r a d i a t i o n p y r o m e t e r .

0.65 to 10  $\mu\text{m}$  radiation and can be used in the temperature

range of 0-3500°C with an accuracy of 0.75% (full scale).

The

sensors may be sensing a very narrow wavelength band (e.g., 0.9, 1.0, 1.6  $\mu\text{m}$ ) or a broad band (8-14  $\mu\text{m}$ ). Sometimes the sensing of the beam is obstructed and this

causes incorrect readings. Such situations arise when 1. The object is too small so that the target area is incompletely filled. 2. Dust, smoke, or steam obscure the line of sight. 3. The windows are covered with dust or dirt and are difficult to clean. 4. Emissivity of the object changes due to surface conditions and composition. 5. Due to intermediate obstructions such as safety grills, furnace parts, and handling equipment the object cannot be observed fully.

Figure 14.10 Thermal sensor. The above difficulties can be solved in some situations by

using a two-color pyrometer. A two-color pyrometer senses two different wavelengths

from the incident radiation. This can be achieved by using two separate detectors or a rotating filter disc as shown in

Figure 14.11. A double detector device will sense the two wavelengths at the same time. A rotating filter disc will have

a time lag in the two responses. If the two wavelengths are chosen properly they will be affected equally by the above mentioned obstructions. Thus their effect will be cancelled if

we take the ratio of the intensities. This ratio will then depend

only on the temperature of the object. There is a limit up to which the loss of signal due to

obstructions will not affect the temperature reading. This limit depends on the design and measurement situation and

Figure 14.11 Principle of two-color pyrometer.

can be 5:1-25:1. The two wavelengths chosen are 0.7 and

1.8  $\mu\text{m}$  and 1.55 and 1.68  $\mu\text{m}$ . These instruments are used in heat treatment furnaces, foundries, kilns, ovens and the like.

It is necessary to carefully assess the situation and locate the

instrument to avoid reflected rays entering the beam.

14.11.1 Advantages of Radiation Pyrometers 1. There is no contact between the object and the sensing head. 2. Because there is no contact and the response is quick, the temperature of the moving bodies can be measured, e.g., ingot being rolled, flowing liquid metal, etc. 3. As long as the target area is fully covered, the temperature of small objects can be accurately measured. 4. There is (at least theoretically) no upper limit for temperature. 5. The instrument can be used for a wide range of materials during their processing such as rolling, extrusion, point drying, ovens for plastic, rubber, and paper. 6. Portable, battery operated, and handheld models are also available.

14.11.2 Limitations 1. The available optical and sensor materials pose a practical limit on the wavelengths that can be measured. 2. These pyrometers are not as universally applicable as thermocouples. Radiation pyrometers require careful assessment of the problem and choice of the suitable instrument. 3. Radiation pyrometers have a quick response and good accuracy but are costlier than thermocouples. 4. The temperature of objects with a thick scale cannot be measured accurately. 5. Emissivity correction is required.

#### 14.12 MISCELLANEOUS TEMPERATURE-RELATED DEVICES

##### 14.12.1 Temperature Indicating Colors

These are made from pure metals, eutectics, alloys, intermetallic compounds, and inorganic salts. They all have a cali

brated single melting point or a very narrow solidus-liquidus

gap. The calibration is equal to 1% and is available in the tem

perature range of 38-1371°C. These materials are formulated

in the form of sticks, liq

uids, pellets, stickers, and labels. They are used to mark the

object to be heated (like a chalk) or are placed on the object in

the furnace. When the object surface acquires the calibrated tempera

ture, these markings change their color or disappear, thus giv

ing an indication of the temperature. These markers are very useful to monitor furnace linings,

furnace charge, and for calibrating the furnace pyrometer.

#### 14.12.2 Bimetallic Devices

The basic temperature sensing element in these devices consists of a thin strip made of two different metals. One of the

metals has a low coefficient of thermal expansion and the

other has a high coefficient. The strip is made by corolling or

electrodeposition. When such a bimetallic strip is heated, it bends due

to expansion. The angle of bending is proportional to the

temperature (or to the temperature difference with the

ambient). The metals or alloys used for the strip must have the fol

lowing properties to make a good instrument: 1. The difference between the expansion coefficients should be very large. 2. Bending should be proportional to the temperature over a wide range. 3. The expansion must be reversible and there should be no thermal fatigue and corrosion. 4. The strip should be available in various thicknesses. A number of bimetals are commercially available. The

high expansion component is an alloy of iron, nickel, chromium, and manganese. Low expansion alloy is made from iron and nickel. They are applicable in the range of  $-30$  to  $+300^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The construction of a typical bimetallic thermometer is

shown in Figure 14.12. The sheath encased strip is firmly fixed to the bottom of the

sheath. The other end is fixed to a bar attached to a simple dial

indicator. These thermometers are used for low temperature ovens and domestic apparatus. They are used as indicators and

cheap and simple temperature controllers. They are of simple and rugged construction. Temperature indication and control can be achieved to  $5^{\circ}\text{C}$  in the range  $80$  to  $350^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

#### 14.12.3 Bimetallic Energy Regulators

This is an interesting device which can be used for the temper

ature control of small and large furnaces and appliances.

Figure 14.12 Bimetallic thermometer. The principle of operation of an energy regulator is shown

in Figure 14.13. A bimetallic strip has a resistance heater wound around it.

One end of the strip is fixed. The free end has a contact attached

to it. There is a movable contact opposite the contact on the strip.

This contact is moved by a spring and knob. The movement of the knob adjusts the separation distance between the contacts. When put in the ON position, the contacts touch each

other. The strip heater is put on and the strip is heated. This

causes bending and separation of contacts which cuts off the heater. The strip cools and straightens. Again the contacts touch and the heater is turned on. Thus, an ON-OFF cycle depends on initial contact separation which is adjusted by the

knob. The ON-OFF cycle affects the outgoing supply similarly. The power supply to the furnace is thus put on an ON

OFF cycle. This controls the energy supplied during a given time span. Hence, the name "energy regulator." Due to the cyclic supply the temperature of the furnace is

indirectly controlled. The contacts are rated at 3-15 amps but

can be supplemented by high rating electromagnetic contac

tors to control larger furnaces. The following points about energy regulator are noteworthy: 1. The instrument has a simple construction and is very inexpensive. 2. It is completely independent of the furnace. 3. There is no temperature measuring component. 4. The temperature is controlled independently on a time cycle. 5. Precise control is not possible. 6. The degree of temperature control obtained for a given time cycle will depend on the thermal design and operation of the furnace. 7. A separate pyrometer will be required to measure the temperature. 8. There is no upper limit for temperature as far as the regulator is concerned. 9. Control can be obtained at 20-30°C about the desired value. F i g u r e 1 4 . 1 3 B i m e t a l l i c e n e r g y r e g u l a t o r .

#### 14.12.4 Throwaway Tips

When measuring the temperature of molten metals like steel, cast iron, and nickel alloy the pyrometer is required to be dipped

in the molten metal at temperatures exceeding 1500°C. The mol



ten metals are extremely reactive and turbulent, which exposes

the pyrometer to an extreme environment. This reduces its life. To overcome this problem the pyrometers are made of

throwaway tips or hot junctions. The tips are made of very thin

Pt-Pt, Rh wires embedded in alumina powder and packed in

thin metal or cardboard tubes. These tubes are plugged in the

metal stem of the pyrometer. The tips (or the thermocouple) last

for a very short time and then burn off. However, this time is

sufficient to obtain a temperature reading. Each tip can be used only once, hence, the name "throw

away tip." However, they are quite inexpensive. For cast iron and some steels, the solidus and liquidus

temperatures can be correlated to the carbon and silicon con

tent. Hence, with proper recording instruments, the throw

away tips can be used for determination of carbon, silicon, etc.,

in cast irons.

#### 14.13 TEMPERATURE INDICATORS

In the previous sections we have reviewed the various types of

sensors available for sensing the temperature, their advan

tages, and choice. Every type of sensor will require some indicator to dis

play the sensed temperature. In this section we will review the

indicators commonly used and then the limitations.

Bimetallic sensors use a dial-gauge-type mechanical indicator working on a rack, a gear train, and a needle indicator moving on a graduated dial. Mercury in steel tube thermometers works on pressure changes in the sealed tube due to the expansion of mercury. A simple burden tube indicator graduated in temperature scale is used for display, mainly used to measure low temperature. Measuring the temperature of flue gases, oil quenching tanks in heat treatment, and hard anodizing bath temperature are some of the examples. The simplest indicator is a millivoltmeter with a dial big enough to read the temperature to the required accuracy. Some type of cold junction compensation is provided. As the indicator needle moves by a mechanical movement of a current carrying suspended coil, it does not have much power and sensitivity. Readings are usually restricted to  $10^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The instrument is delicate but inexpensive and simple. It is used for portable pyrometers. Thermocouples produce a small e.m.f. proportional to the temperature. Depending upon the object condition it is constantly changing. The best instrument to measure small voltages is the potentiometer. Here the test voltage is balanced against a known comparable voltage. Balancing is done by moving a contact against a slide wire. The exact balance is

obtained when there is no current. Thus this is a null method of

measurement and hence very sensitive and accurate. However,

the manual process of balancing takes time. To overcome the time problem and to obtain quick and

continuous readings, automatic balancing potentiometers

were developed. Here the thermocouple e.m.f. is amplified and

used to drive a servo motor to move the moving contact for bal

ancing. At the null point the servo motor automatically stops.

Thus, the pointer continuously moves from one balance point

to the next. As the pointer is motor-driven its movement is

powerful and can be used to drive the pen of a chart recorder.

It can also be used to actuate the controller.

Self-balancing indicators are quite rugged. They are very

sensitive and accurate and can be easily adapted to changes in

the measuring range. They have a complicated construction,

are very costly, and are not portable. They require an external

pyrometer for their working. The Wheatstone bridge used with resistance pyrometers

can be made self-balancing. Currently, the indicators used on all types of pyrometers

are digital. They display the temperature in numbers, thus

dispensing with the dial and pointer. In digital indicators the analog voltage signal from the

thermocouple is converted into a digital signal (numerical

signal) and displayed on a counter. The details of their work

ing are beyond the scope of this chapter. These instruments are very fast and accurate. They

require very little external power and due to developments in integrated circuits, they are very small in size. Hence they can be used on portable as well as panel instruments.

Their indicating numbers are well-lighted so that there is no

difficulty in reading. They are very fast acting, accurate, and

sensitive. The working details of all indicators discussed above are

unimportant for the furnace designer. Enough information is given to make a choice for projected furnaces.

#### 14.14 TEMPERATURE CONTROLLERS

For many heating operations, simple indication is not enough

(e.g., heat treatment). It is necessary to control the tempera

ture within certain limits or to control the heating and cooling

rates, etc. For processes like zone melting or semiconductor,

the temperature has to be maintained virtually constant, or

within a very narrow band for a long time. Where temperatures involved are not high ( $< 400^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) sim

ple control instruments based on bimetallic switching action

are sufficient. These controllers are called thermostats. They

can maintain the temperature within a range of  $10$  to  $20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . For higher temperatures, narrow temperature variations,

and longer times, electronic controllers are used. It is not possible

to discuss their design or circuits here as they belong to a

specialized field of electronics and control engineering. We will review their control actions broadly so that the

furnace designer can make a choice of suitable controller. Typical time-temperature cycles of a furnace are shown

in Figure 14.14(A). The cycles can be divided timewise in

three sections. Section I is heating from initial temperature

to set temperature  $T_s$ , the second part (section II) shows the

maintenance of  $T_s$  for a long (process) time. Lastly, section III

shows cooling. The second cycle shows that heating and cooling

are done in steps:  $T_0 \rightarrow T_1 \rightarrow T_s$  for heating and  $T_s \rightarrow T_2 \rightarrow T_0$  for cooling. These are the cycles desired. The first controller cycle called On-Off, controls the heater

on or off to maintain the temperature within a band on the lower side  $T_s - \Delta T$ . The width of the band  $\Delta T$  is adjustable.

Figure 14.14 Temperature Control Cycles.

It is also possible to have different widths on high and low

sides. The signal from the sensors is compared with the control

band. If it lies out of the band, a switch operates to put the

heater on or off as necessary. As only two control actions, on or

off are available, the temperature is maintained fluctuating

within the band. To obtain better control there may be two

or

more switches in series. Thus, for the off signal, the first switch will then turn off the second heater as required. This is

the simplest controller and is suitable for large furnaces and

wide control limits. The thermal mass of the furnace gives a slow control action. Figure 14.14(C) shows the action of the proportional con

troller. On sensing the deviation of actual temperature from the set point  $T_s$ , the controller will take remedial action but

will overshoot. This will initiate the next action to reduce the

overshoot. These actions will continue giving temperature oscillations until the temperature is stabilized a little above or

below the set point. This controller is better than the on-off

control. The final deviation, i.e., the set-off, can be controlled

or the oscillations can be reduced but cannot be removed. Pro

portional controllers are suitable for furnaces having low ther

mal mass and fast heating rates. The next control option is the floating control. The con

troller senses the temperature against the allowable variation

band. If the temperature is outside the band, the control

device (motor, valve transformer tap, etc.) takes control action

and, brings the temperature within the band. Once within the band, the controller action stops until an out-of-band signal is received. Thus, the controlled temperature oscillates within the band. Mathematical operations on the controlled signal, with respect to time, can be performed electronically or numerically on a computer. Thus, its differential coefficient  $dT/dt$  will give information about the slope of the controlled variable. Similarly, its integration  $\int T dt$  will give its rate of approach to the set point and the direction of approach. Controllers that can perform differential and integral operations are called "derivative" and "integral" controllers. In actual control, these control actions are not used singly but in combination with proportional controllers. This gives proportional and integral controllers, (P,I) and PID controllers offering proportional, integral, and derivative actions. Normally, controllers can be set for any combination. The control response of PID controllers is shown in Figure 14.14(D) and Figure 14.14(E). PID controllers are useful when there are sudden changes in temperature. For example, the door of a furnace opened in midcycle (say for

loading,

etc.) and the temperature is drastically lowered due to loss of

condition. These controllers are very costly. They are also used

for precision furnaces. All the controllers discussed above produce an output sig

nal of the desired type. This signal is required to be amplified

and matched to the controlling device. The controlling devices are relays, contactors, motorized

valves, solenoid valves, etc. They require considerable power

for their operation. When specifying a controller, the designer must carefully

consider the following points. 1. The operation cycle – continuous or batch. 2. Allowable variations in set temperature, i.e., width of the control band. 3. Duration of the cycle. 4. Possible interference in operation. 5. The thermal inertia of the furnaces as a whole, both with and without load. Remembering that simply specifying a sophisticated con

troller does not guarantee required temperature control. It

has to be matched with the furnace and the load.



## 15 15. Miscellany and Further

moisture. The temperatures involved are low (80-250 ° ).  
Drying

is used in many diverse processes, each with its own  
peculiar

ities. Consequently, the variety of dryers available is  
large.

Some typical dryers are briefly discussed. Baking, like  
drying, is a low temperature process. It is

mainly used in the food industry but has applications in  
many

fields. The purpose of baking may be to make the article  
from

dough (bread, cakes), to give crispness, to increase the  
taste or

appearance, to improve bonding, and so on. Some  
representative

baking ovens are presented to bring out their design  
features. Fans are used in many furnaces and ovens. They  
are

mainly used for the circulation of gases and supply air to  
the

burners. Fan-induced air flow is also used for convective  
cool

ing. Considering these applications, a short and limited  
intro

duction to fans is also included. This should be helpful to  
the

designer in choosing a proper fan for a given application  
from

manufacturers' literature. A short postscript on recently  
available materials appears

at the end. The use of most of these materials in heating  
is not

yet well established. However, they are sure to play an important role in the future.

## 15.2 SOME TYPICAL FURNACES

### 15.2.1 Rotating Hearth Furnace

This is a continuous type of furnace in which the hearth is made

in the form of a flat, circular ring. It forms the bottom of a cylindrical furnace. The hearth rotates around its center while the

furnace (i.e., the walls and top) is stationary. The hearth is

rotated by a gear drive which may be located at the center or the

outside. A radial partition wall separates the charging and dis

charging doors. A number of tangential burners are fixed on the

upper side of the outer walls. Combustion gases exit through a

port located opposite the discharge door. In large furnaces the

hearth moves on a circular rail track. The construction is out

lined in Figure 15.1. The following features make this type of furnace an attrac

tive proposal for many applications: 1. The circular, rotating hearth makes these furnaces very convenient and compact preheating units for process applications such as forging or extrusion. 2. Large-sized furnaces have a hearth width up to 5.0 m so that medium to heavy-sized work pieces can be easily accommodated. 3. Variable rotational speeds and indexing makes the operation flexible. A heating cycle

to suit any material can be easily adjusted.

Figure 15.1 Rotating hearth furnace. 4. It is possible to build smaller units having hearth widths up to 0.5 m. These small units can be used for light jobs such as heating for press working, intermediate annealing, and even drying or baking. 5. Large furnaces are usually oil and gas-heated. Smaller furnaces can use electricity or LPG. 6. As the charging and discharging doors are adjacent, one operator can carry out both the operations. 7. Linear continuous furnaces usually require some means of moving the work pieces through. In rotary furnaces no such mechanisms are necessary. 8. Instead of the hearth, the roof can be made as rotating. This will enable work pieces to be hung on the roof. They will receive uniform heat from all sides. 9. Some sealing arrangement will be required between the moving hearth and stationary walls to prevent the ingress of cold air or escape of hot gases.

10. The number, position, and capacity of the burners is an important design factor. This will help to adjust the desired heating and soaking periods.

11. The hearth can be divided into a number of zones by using hanging (chain) curtains.

12. If the burners are well above the workpieces, the major heating mode is radiation.

#### 15.2.2 Automatic Integral Quench Furnace

Hardening heat treatment of steels requires heating the work to a

certain temperature and quenching it in a suitable medium of a

much lower temperature. The practical hardening cycle involves

heating to hardening (austenizing) temperature at a certain rate

and then holding it (soaking) at that temperature for a certain

time. The heating rate and soaking time depends on the steel com

position and size of the work. The quenching medium is

usually oil. Figure 15.2 shows a modern furnace in which all the

operational sequences are carried out automatically. A typical

cycle may be Loading → Heating → Soaking → Quenching →

Unloading. The quenching tank and quenching operation is

part of the system, hence the name “integral quench” furnace. Figure 15.2 Automatic integral quench furnace. The central part of the system is the furnace. It may be

electrically or radiant-tube heated. A protective atmosphere is

introduced at the top and circulated by a fan. The hearth has

alloy rails on which the load rests. The furnace has two air

operated doors, one in front and the other in the back walls. A complex charging/loading/pushing mechanism is located

in front. The loading rolls and rails are accurately aligned with

the hearth rails. The load charging/pushing is accomplished by

forked racks which can be raised or lowered by an air-operated

mechanism. The prepared (loaded) work baskets are kept on the

rollers. An electric motor moves the racks and baskets into the

furnace chamber. A quenching system is located next to the back door. After

heating and soaking, the load baskets are pushed out on the

air-operated quench frame. A quench tank is located below the

frame. The frame and tank are located in a steel quenching chamber. On receiving the hot load, the frame lowers it into the quenching tank. Thus the quenching operation is achieved without loss of heat or time. After the predetermined time in the tank, the frame and load are raised and discharged (pushed) over to the run out table through the unloading door. The protective atmosphere is discharged through the intermediate door and occupies the space above the quench tank, before burning at the flame curtain at the discharging door. This arrangement protects the hot load for a short time before quenching. A flame curtain is also provided at the front door. A matching gas generator provides the required protective atmosphere. The whole operating cycle, temperatures, loading, discharging, etc., is automatically sequenced so that no operator is necessary. Control is exercised from a separate station which can be located away from the furnace. The quenching tank has a large capacity and is provided with circulators and heat exchanges to obtain uniform temperature and circulation. The typical furnace size is 600 × 900 × 450 mm with a quench tank holding 3000 l of oil. Larger units are available. These furnaces are extremely suitable for

production jobs.

### 15.2.3 Vacuum Gas Furnace

Heat treatment of high alloy steels such as all types of tool

steels presents some peculiar problems. These steels are machined or shaped in an annealed (soft) condition. The shapes are quite complicated and have varying thicknesses.

Typical examples are dies, press tools, forging tools, cutting

tools, etc. After machining they are hardened and tempered.

Hardening requires thorough heating to temperatures in the order of 1000-1200 ° C followed by quenching (fast cooling) by

a suitable coolant (quenchant). Tempering requires reheating of quenched articles to 600-1000 ° C, at a certain rate and then

slow cooling at a certain rate. To avoid oxidation both opera

tions require heating in a protective atmosphere. Quenching

poses problems of distortion and fracture. If quenching is carried out by using a cool inert gas, the cool

ing rate is less severe than that obtained by oils or water. This

reduces or often eliminates the problem of distortion or cracking. Vacuum-gas furnaces are designed for using a vacuum

atmosphere for heating and an inert gas such as dry, pure

nitrogen for quenching or slow cooling. As both vacuum and

inert gas are used in the same enclosure, they pose interesting

design problems. Heating is usually done by indirect electrical

heating. Some vacuum tempering designs may be (externally)

heated by gas, as the temperatures are low. A typical vacuum-gas hardening furnace is shown in

Figure 15.3. The furnace is of the cold-wall vacuum-type having a hor

izontal cylindrical shape. The main body has a cooling

jacket. The door ④ is also water-cooled and has a gasket to

provide a vacuum-tight seal. Heating is achieved by indirect

electrical heaters ③ placed radially. Either graphite or molyb

denum heating elements are used. Both types require a low

voltage, high current supply. The work is usually kept in a basket and is supported

by a combination of molybdenum and graphite supports. The

vessel is evacuated through the vacuum port ⑤ . The vacuum

system consists of a diffusion pump backed by a roots blower

and a mechanical pump. F i g u r e 1 5 . 3 V a c u u m g a s h e a t t r e a t m e n t f u r n a c e ( F o r d e s c r i p t i o n s e e t e x t ) . For the quenching or tempering operation, dry pure nitro

gen is supplied to the evacuated chamber through the opening

until the desired pressure (2-3 Bar) is reached. The cool nitro

gen enters the chamber radially through graphite nozzles,

and surrounds the work from all sides so as to obtain an even

cooling rate. The gas coming out of the nozzles gets heated on contact

with the work and the hot furnace interior. It is axially drawn

out by a fan through the compact heat exchanger ⑥. Its temperature

is brought down to less than 150 °C and is recirculated

via channel to the nozzles and the chamber. The path

of gas circulation is shown by arrows. The heat exchanger

fluid is water and is admitted through the passage. The circulation

goes on until the whole chamber cools to about 150 °C

and then the door is opened. This safeguards the graphite/molybdenum

heating elements. The same or a similar furnace is used for a subsequent

tempering operation. Here, the temperature is lower and a nitrogen

atmosphere is kept throughout the tempering

period. It can be seen from the figure that the design of the furnace

is quite complicated. It requires several auxiliary systems

and a complex sequencing and control system.

Specifications of a commercial furnace of this type are

given below. Work space 800 × 800 × 1200 mm Overall size 2500 × 3200 mm long Max. temperature 1350 °C Temperature uniformity 5 °C in work space Heating power 200 kW-3 ph Fan motor 60 kW Vacuum 10<sup>-2</sup> - 10<sup>-5</sup> mbar Leakage rate < 1 × 10<sup>-3</sup> mbar/sec Weight of charge 1000 kg max Quenching gas Dry, pure N<sub>2</sub> Gas pressure during hardening 1.5-6 bar For one quenching Gas consumption 10 m<sup>3</sup> Water consumption 20 m<sup>3</sup> /h quenching

#### 15.2.4 Linear Continuous Furnaces

As the name suggests these furnaces have a straightthrough



movement of charge. The through movement may be achieved either by pushing work loaded baskets through or by placing the work on a continuous, moving mesh belt. A typical linear continuous furnace is shown in Figure 15.4. The furnace consists of three main zones – preheating, heating, and cooling. The preheating zone operates at a low temperature (100-500 ° C) and is used for drying, dewaxing, or general preheating. This is followed by the heating zone at the required process temperature (900-1500 ° C). Heating on both zones is achieved by resistance elements, metallic or nonmetallic. The heating zone may be nominally divided into three parts. The first part will bring the work to the desired temperature (heating). The second part will maintain the temperature for some time (soaking). This can be achieved by varying the power input to the zones. The third or end part of the furnace will have no heating elements and will act as a slow cooling zone. Many processes such as sintering and brazing, require a protective atmosphere which is usually reducing. Such reducing atmospheres are harmful to most of the resistance heating material. To avoid a reaction between the atmosphere and the heaters, a metallic alloy inner muffle is used to separate the atmosphere and work from the heaters. Small sections and short furnaces may use a ceramic inner muffle. For achieving the required properties in the work, a

certain temperature-time combination is required in the heating zones. The temperature or its gradient in the zones is maintained by a suitable temperature control system.

The time is adjusted by adjusting the belt speed. With

these two controls the furnace can be adjusted to process a variety of materials. In a pusher pipe furnace the control is

obtained by timing the introduction of a new work basket in the furnace. The same basic design can be used for baking operations.

The temperature required is of the order of 250-300 ° C. The cooling zone is usually not required. Baking evolves water vapor and carbon dioxide; hence the heating is best done in a

stainless steel inner muffle. Embedded and sealed heating elements are used. A very large variety of these furnaces are commercially available. Molybdenum, tungsten, or graphite heating elements with hydrogen as the protective atmosphere are available up to

2000 ° C. The load capacity of mesh belts is a limiting factor. Com

mercially, Ni-Cr, Ni-Cu, monel, inconel, or stainless steel belts

are available, which can be used up to 1100 ° C. For higher temperatures only pusher-type designs are possible with

roller hearths. The protective atmosphere is generally introduced in

the central zone. It flows toward the doors where the chain and flame curtains are situated. A circulating fan may be used.

### 15.3 INCINERATORS

The production and accumulation of garbage in urban areas all over the world is assuming alarming proportions. Toxic and

lethal by-products from chemical industries are polluting riv

ers and beaches and have already posed health problems.

Incineration or burning off is one of the attractive (and some

times the only) solutions. The incineration process has been studied and developed

in highly industrialized countries. However, it is rarely used

in undeveloped or developed countries. It is with the desire to

create an awareness of the technology of incineration that a

limited review is taken in this chapter. The nature and properties of "garbage" as a fuel are

already discussed in Chapter 5. The following points need consideration when designing

an incinerator: 1. Types of Garbage Garbage can be classified on the basis of its origin. I. Municipal garbage – This is collected from streets, bins, beaches, and public places. II. Establishment garbage – This garbage originates from hospitals, restaurants, small nonchemical industries, etc. III. Kitchen or household garbage – From individual homes or residential buildings. IV. Special garbage – From chemical industries, slaughterhouses, food processing plants, markets, etc. There can be many more

types depending upon local

industries and population. 2. Composition of Garbage Like other fuels (such as oil and gas) garbage does not have a single composition. The constituents depend on origin, geographical location, seasonal consumption trends of local populations, and many other factors. Thus, there are wide limits within which the composition varies. For example, the moisture content in municipal waste can vary between 10-40% depending on the season. 3. Combustion problems Due to variations in composition, the combustion of garbage cannot be carried out in a single stage and requires additional external fuel like gas or oil. Combustion is therefore invariably carried out in two stages.

In the first stage ( $\sim 600-800^\circ\text{C}$ ), the moisture is converted to steam and readily combustible constituents such as grass and paper are burnt. The steam and unburnt (pyrolyzed) gases flow to the next stage. Additional air and fuel are supplied to the gas in the next stage. Here complete combustion takes place. The waste gas is now essentially nontoxic and consists of  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{N}_2$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , etc. The temperature is  $800-1000^\circ\text{C}$ . 4. Waste gas from large incinerators usually require additional treatment such as cleaning, dust precipitation, and cooling. Depending upon the operational practice, it may be pos

sible to recover some of the waste heat by using a recuperater

or waste heat boiler. A large amount of ash is collected below the grates or in

the post incineration chamber. This arises from metals and

glass in the garbage. It is used for road building, ballasts, etc. To make the incineration more easy and economical, it

is necessary to separate large pieces of metal, glass, and

stones, etc., from the garbage. This can be done mechanically

or manually. Three representative incinerator designs are discussed

next. Note that there are many possible variations depending

on the type and amount (T/day) to be incinerated, local avail

able fuel, legal restrictions on waste gas constituents, water

availability, and location and transport facilities.

### 15.3.1 Large Scale Municipal Incinerator

The typical municipal garbage has a nominal composition. Dry dust, leaves, and wood 4-44% Food, vegetable, and organic matter 8-30% Paper cardboard 20-30% Metals 5-10% Rags, ropes, and textiles 2-10% Plastics 1-6% Unclassified 1-10% Moisture 5-35% The range is extremely wide. The volume of garbage is

very large ( $1 - 3 \times 10^3$  T/day). A typical municipal incinerator is shown in Figure 15.5.

Due to high volume, the loading is carried out by mechanical

means such as a grab crane. The garbage is charged on the

inclined, moving grate. Burners over and below the grate raise

the temperature to  $600-800^\circ$  C. The moisture is evaporated

and dry combustible matter starts burning. Combustion is F  
i g u r e 1 5 . 5 T y p i c a l m u n i c i p a l g a r b a  
g e i n c i n e r a t o r .

completed as the mass reaches the end of the grate and is

removed through the doors at the bottom. Gases and steam evolved from combustion pass to a post

incineration chamber. It is supplied with excess air and the

temperature is raised to  $1000-1200^\circ$  C by the auxiliary burner.

The combustion is completed as the hot gases pass forward.

The gas pressure is controlled by a damper in the waste

gas flue. Gas cleaning and dust precipitation is done before the

gas is released into the atmosphere through the stack.

Incineration reduces the garbage volume by more than

90%. Sorted out glass, metals, plastics, and ash are saleable

by-products.

### 15.3.2 Medium or Small Scale Incinerator

In these designs the volume required to be handled is not large (200-2000 kg/day), hence the charging is done manually.

A U-type design is shown in Figure 15.6. The basic design is similar to that in Figure 15.5. The U construction has made the incinerator compact and hence, suitable for small or medium establishments. Gas cleaning and precipitation is usually unnecessary unless the charge contains hazardous chemicals. A tall stack is adequate. Cremation of human bodies and incineration of dead animals

and surgical waste are carried out in this type of incineration.

They usually operate on electricity, gas, or light oil such as diesel.

### 15.3.3 Domestic or Office Incinerator

Domestic garbage contains moisture, food, and vegetable matter as the main constituents, along with small amounts of paper, plastics, glass, and metals. Office garbage mainly contains all types of paper as the

major constituent. Small amounts of chemicals, rubber, plastics, glass, and metals are the minor constituents. A small hospital or clinic's garbage contains bandages,

dressings, and cotton swabs in large amounts. Plastic syringes,

bottles, tubes, tissue paper, organic matter such as dried blood,

tissues, and discarded medicines constitute the rest. There is also

a lot of moisture. **Figure 15.6 Small scale incinerator.** The volume is small (5-50 kg/day). The main requirements

are a compact design, easy operation, and clean waste gas. A typical incinerator of this type is shown in Figure 15.7.

Outwardly the incinerator looks like a vertical-loading domestic

washing machine. The incineration chamber is like a basket with a grill or grate at the bottom. A part of the wall is

perforated for the gas to exit. There is a gas burner (or electric

heater) for primary heating. The combustion gases pass

through a secondary chamber that is the bottom part of the

stock. An auxiliary burner located here completes the combustion.

Air is drawn in through grills at the bottom. Ash is collected in a drawer located below the grate.

#### 15.4 HEAT EXCHANGERS

Heat exchangers are accessories used in heating/cooling processes to transfer waste heat from one fluid to other. Thus it

involves two fluids, one hot and the other cool. Both fluids may

be gases or liquids or one gas and the other liquid. The hot fluid flows through a tube heating the tube surface,

while the cold fluid flows over the tube and picks up heat

from the hot fluid via the tube surface. Thus, the heat is

exchanged between the fluids. It is also possible to

achieve the same result by having the hot fluid flow over the tube while the cold fluid flows through. Heat exchangers find wide applications in chemical and mechanical engineering. Almost all internal combustion engines (except small ones) require a separate heat exchanger (radiator) to cool the engine coolant. Similarly, air conditioning and heating require heat exchangers. Chemical industries use them to heat or cool process products and intermediates. Combustion furnaces produce large amounts of flue gases which leave the furnace at a high temperature. If directly released into the atmosphere, considerable heat is wasted. If passed through an exchanger, at least some of the heat can be recovered by heating fresh air for combustion. It is also possible to obtain hot water or steam from flue gas heat exchangers

**F i g u r e 1 5 . 7 D o m e s t i c i n c i n e r a t o r .**

called "recuperators." Large induction heating plants use considerable quantities of water for cooling. The hot water is usually passed through an exchanger, cooled, and then reused. Hardening/quenching operations heat up the quenching media (oil or water). It is necessary to cool these in between quenching batches. Thus, there are many heating processes in which the



use of a heat exchanger is necessary and economical. Modern vacuum gas quenching furnaces heat the metal

to the hardening temperature under vacuum. Quenching is achieved by introducing a cool gas (usually nitrogen) in the furnace. The gas picks up heat from the charge. A compact heat exchanger situated "inside" the furnace cools the gas and

recirculates it over the charge. This is done to conserve the

costly gas. Another class of heat exchangers used in large furnaces

is called "regenerators." These are operated in a cyclic fashion.

For a certain period the flue gas is passed through them, so that the regenerator body (usually refractory) absorbs heat. In

the next period, cold air is passed through the heated brick work to pick up heat. This cycle is repeated. The furnaces and equipment discussed in this book are

not likely to use regenerators. Hence, these are not discussed

further.

#### 15.4.1 Classification of Heat Exchangers

There are a vast number of heat exchanger designs and many schemes for their classification. As our interest in these devices is limited, we will adopt a classification based on the

flow mode of the two heat exchanging media. The simplest heat exchanger (Figure 15.8) is a tube in a

tube heat exchanger. The hot fluid flows through the inner

tube and the cold fluid through the outer tube. The temperatures are  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , ( $t_1 > t_2$ ). Heat transfer from the hot fluid to the cold takes place through the wall of the inner tube. The outer tube is insulated to prevent heat loss. In the figure, both fluids flow in the same direction, i.e., "parallel flow." The fluids can flow in opposite directions, i.e., "counter flow." The change in the temperatures of the fluids, as they pass through the exchange, are also shown in the figure. An important factor involved in the heat transfer between the fluids is the area of contact or length of contact. In a simple tube exchanger this area is very small and hence this type of exchanger has limited applications. The heat transfer coefficient in this and all other types of exchangers will depend upon the flow conditions, i.e., the Reynolds numbers of the two fluids. Usually the flow is laminar or transitional ( $Re\ 3 \times 10^3$  to  $5 \times 10^4$ ). To increase the thermal contact surface, the hot fluid is given a number of passes through or inside the outer tube. This gives rise to shell and tube exchangers (Figure 15.9). Some shell and

Figure 15.8 Simple heat exchanger.

tube exchangers are shown in the figure. The two fluids are called the "tube side" fluid ( $f_1$ ) and the "shell side" fluid ( $f_2$ ).

Figure 15.9(A) shows a single-shell two pass-design while

Figure 15.9(B) shows a single-shell six-pass exchanger.

Figure 15.9(C) shows a single-pass shell, single-pass, multi tube design. Here the fluid passes through the shell only once

but there are four or more parallel tubes. Note the baffles which help to circulate the shell side fluid around the tubes.

The temperature distribution of the fluids through the exchangers remains essentially similar to that shown in the figure. These types of exchangers are useful in recovering or

dissipating heat from coolants or quenchants. Besides parallel and counter-flow arrangements a third

common scheme uses "cross" flow. Here one fluid (usually hot)

flows through the tubes while the second fluid flows over the

tubes at a right angle to the tube axis. A single tube cross-flow

arrangement is shown in Figure 15.10. If the flow conditions

of the outer fluid ( $f_2$ ) are kept suitable (laminar or transient)

Figure 15.9 Some typical shell/tube heat exchangers.

heat is transferred via the tube wall by conduction and convec

tion as the fluid-wall contact is good. Single tube

cross-flow heat exchangers are of little practical use as the surface area of the tube is very limited. Practical designs of this type use tube banks as shown in Figure 15.10(C), Figure 15.10(D). Two types of tube arrangements are used. Figure 15.10(C) shows an "inline" arrangement while Figure 15.10(D) shows a "staggered" arrangement. In both types the tubes are placed at regular longitudinal and cross pitches  $x_l$  and  $x_t$ . These pitches are related to the tube diameter  $d$ , such as  $x_l = p \times d$  and  $x_t = q \times d$ . The tubes are welded to the header plates. These exchangers are extensively used for recovery of heat from waste gases. A typical cross-flow heat exchanger for recovery of heat (flue gas recuperator) is shown in Figure 15.11.

Figure 15.10 Cross-flow heat exchangers. Heat exchangers of interest to us are constructed from welded steel. For temperatures higher than about  $500^\circ\text{C}$ , special heat-resistant alloys are used. For large furnaces and high temperatures the exchangers are constructed from refractory bricks and special shapes. In some applications there are severe restrictions on the size and weight of the exchangers. Some special furnaces (e.g., vacuum and gas quench), all automotive applications, and small air conditioners have such requirements. In these cases

“compact heat exchangers” are used. We have seen that the surface

area available for the exchange is a key factor in the exchanger

design. The tube surface area in the exchange is increased by

using a finned tube. The fins may be on the internal, external,

or both surfaces as shown in Figure 15.12(A), Figure 15.12(B),

Figure 15.12(C), and Figure 15.12(D). To achieve further improvement in the heat transfer coefficient

the construction is made from aluminium or copper.

Figure 15.11 Typical cross-flow flue gas recuperator. Figure 15.12 Compact heat exchangers.

Compact heat exchangers (Figure 15.12(D)) are used at low

temperatures ( $< 400^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The fluids are air, gas, and water. Heat exchangers are costly and require regular maintenance

as they are prone to corrosion, scaling, and clogging.

They significantly increase the capital and running costs.

They usually require pumps, compressors, or fan drives for

fluid circulation. Investment in heat exchangers is justified in following

conditions: 1. When the investment is recovered by the saving in the cost of fuel. 2. They are mandatory by the environmental regulations. 3. Where irrespective of the costs involved, they are necessary (e.g., aviation, space, and military applications).

#### 15.4.2 Convective Heat Transfer over Tube Banks

In the previous section we have seen how the fluid circulation

and heat transfer takes place with a forced flow over a

single tube. It was observed that the heat transfer coefficient depends on the circulation of the fluid around the tube, i.e., the wetted perimeter, which in turn depends on the Reynolds number  $Re_d$ , based on the tube diameter, and the arc of contact between the tube and the fluid, is small (under any  $Re_d$ ). Hence, for practical purposes it can be concluded that a single tube is of very little use when large quantities of heat are required to be transferred from or to a tube. In such situations a number of tubes are used so that the surface available for exchange is also quite large. The arrangements are called "tube banks." The tubes are arranged symmetrically in a regular pattern. Two arrangements are more common, the "inline" and the "staggered" as shown in Figure 15.13. The tubes are arranged in rows at a certain pitch  $x$ . The pitch of tubes at right angles to the flow is called the transverse pitch  $x_t$ . The distance between the axes of tubes between two adjacent rows is called the longitudinal pitch  $x_l$ . Both the longitudinal and transverse pitches are related to the external diameter of the tubes  $d_2$  so that  $x_l = p \times d_2$  and  $x_t = q \times d_2$ , where  $p$  and  $q$  may be equal or different. The Reynolds number  $Re_d$  is based on the velocity at the narrowest path in the bank. For "inline" arrangement, the

narrowest path is  $x_t - d$ . For "staggered" arrangement, it

depends on both pitches  $x_t$  and  $x_l$  as can be seen from the

Figure 15.13 External convection over tube banks.

triangle ABC in Figure 15.13(B). The narrowest path may be

along AB or AC(BC). The velocity  $V$  is given by  $V = x_t = V(x_t - d)$  and

where  $\nu$  is the kinematic viscosity ( $m^2/sec$ ) taken at tempera

ture at the entry to the bank. The mean heat transfer coefficient is given by the corre

lations between Nusselt ( $Nu$ ), Reynolds ( $Re_d$ ), and Prandtl

( $Pr$ ) numbers with a correlation factor  $C$ . For inline tube banks (15.1) For staggered tube banks (15.2) Both the correlations are applicable in the range  $Re_d = 10^3$

$- 2 \times 10^5$ . There are correlations available for other Reynolds

numbers but they are not of interest to us. Similarly, there may

be small differences in the numerical constants between corre

lations available from various sources.  $Pr_w$  refers to the

Prandtl number at wall temperature. For air and gases the

term  $(Pr/Pr_w)$  can be neglected. For rough estimates the correc

tion factor may be taken as 1.2 to 1.5. The result obtained from

the above correlations gives an accuracy of 10-15%. The heat transfer coefficient obtained from the above cor

relations is the mean value applicable to the tubes after

the

second row. For the first two rows, the coefficient is 60 and

90%, respectively. This arises due to nonuniform flow over the

first two rows. Correlations and tables are available for various para

meters and coefficients involved in the calculation of tube banks. As our purpose is only to estimate the probable heat and Chapter 4). These sources also give information on the calculation of pressure drop in the bank.

#### 15.4.3 Heat Exchanger Calculations

There are many approaches to the design of heat exchangers.

They are all based on three basic equations of heat balance of

the exchanger. Consider a simple tube in a tube exchanger, as shown ear

lier in Figure 15.8, involving an exchange between two fluids,

$f_1$  (hot) and  $f_2$  (cool). Let  $t'_{f_1}$  and  $t''_{f_1}$  be the temperatures of fluid  $f_1$  at the inlet

and outlet of the exchanger. Similarly, let  $t'_{f_2}$  and  $t''_{f_2}$  be the temperatures of fluid  $f_2$ .

Let  $A$  be the area of contact ( $m^2$ ). Heat lost by the fluid  $f_1$  will be (15.3) Assuming that the outer tube containing  $f_2$  is well insu

lated, the heat taken up by  $f_2$  (15.4) The heat transferred from  $f_1$  to  $f_2$  is  $Q$  and is given by (15.5) Note that subscripts 1 and 2 denote the properties of fluid

$f_1$  and  $f_2$ , respectively. So that  $m \bullet$  = Mass flow rate ( $kg/sec$ )  $\rho$  = Density ( $kg/m^3$ )  $C$  = Specific heat ( $J/kg^\circ C$ )  $h$  = Heat transfer coefficient ( $w/m^2 \ ^\circ C$ )  $\lambda$  =



Thermal conductivity of wall ( $W/m^{\circ}C$ )  $\delta$  = Tube wall thickness (m)  $Q = C_m t = \frac{t_1 - t_2}{\frac{\delta}{k} + \frac{r_1}{h_1} + \frac{r_2}{h_2}}$  (15.5). In Equation (15.5), there are three decisive terms:  $h_1$ ,  $A$ ,

and  $\Delta t$ . Each term needs close inspection. Heat will be transferred first from  $f_1$  to the tube wall and

the heat transfer coefficient will be  $h_1$ . Heat will then be con-

ducted from the inner to the outer surface of the tube and will

depend on the thermal conductivity  $\lambda$  of the wall. Finally the

heat will be transferred from the wall to  $f_2$  and this will take

place with a heat transfer coefficient  $h_2$ . Hence, the heat transfer coefficient  $h$  in the Equation

(15.5) will be the overall heat transfer coefficient and will be

given by (15.6) When the fluids are passing through the exchangers, their

temperatures are continuously changing. Hence, the problem

arises as to which temperatures are to be used in the Equation

15.3 to Equation 15.5. We will have to use mean temperatures

for the fluids. As the change in temperature between the inlet

and outlet is not linear (see Figure 15.8(C), Figure 15.8(D) we

can use an arithmetic mean for small temperature differences,

but it is more appropriate to use "log mean temperature"

(LMTD) given by (15.7) All the physical properties of both the fluids will be those

at the mean temperatures. The area of contact  $A$  can be easily determined from the

geometry of the exchanger for simple shell tube exchangers. For

finned surfaces, this area is different on each side of the wall. When estimating the heat exchanger required for a pro

cess the required area of contact is unknown. Equation (15.5)

is then used to determine the area ( $A$ ). If the tube (inner) size

is known, the length and number of tubes can be determined

from mass flow rate  $m$  through the tube.  $h_1 h_2 = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{h_1} + \frac{1}{h_2}}$  The heat transfer coefficients  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are calculated by

the methods discussed earlier in Chapter 3. Usually the trans

fer takes place by forced convection on both sides of the tube.

If the temperatures are high ( $>600^\circ\text{C}$ ) the contribution of radi

ation to the heat transfer will be significant. In detailed calculations for design there are some correc

tion factors involved. These are not considered here as our

purpose is only that of estimation. The examples that follow will make the estimation pro

cess clear.

#### EXAMPLE 15.1

Design a heat exchanger for recovering heat from flue gas flow

ing at  $2 \text{ m}^3/\text{sec}$  at  $450^\circ\text{C}$ . The heat is to be recovered by using a

cross-flow exchanger using a staggered steel tube bank. The

external diameter of the tubes is 55 mm and the internal diam

eter 50 mm. The lateral and longitudinal spacing is equal and

is  $1.25 \times$  external diameter. The initial temperature of air is  $25^\circ\text{C}$  and the final desired

temperature is  $250^\circ\text{C}$ . The volumetric flow rate of air is  $2.5 \text{ m}^3/\text{sec}$ . Determine 1. The overall heat transfer coefficient 2. The length of tubes 3. Number of tubes 4. Distribution of tubes in rows Data Flue gas output  $2 \text{ m}^3/\text{sec}$  Flue gas density  $1.3 \text{ m}^3/\text{kg}$  Temperature at gas intake ( $t_1$ )  $450^\circ\text{C}$  Initial temperature of air ( $t_2$ )  $25^\circ\text{C}$  Final temperature of air ( $t_2$ )  $250^\circ\text{C}$  Volumetric flow rate of air  $2.5 \text{ m}^3/\text{sec}$  Exchanger tubes ext/int diameter 55/50 mm Arrangement of tubes staggered Lateral spacing = Longitudinal spacing  $1.25d$  2 Velocity of air over narrowest section  $6 \text{ m}/\text{sec}$  of tube bank Mean velocity of the flue gas  $10 \text{ m}/\text{sec}$  through tubes  $V_1$  Solution Mass flow rate of flue gas  $m \cdot 1 = 1.3 \times 2 = 2.6 \text{ kg}/\text{sec}$  Arithmetic mean temperature of air

At this temperature, the properties of air (from the tables) are Density  $\rho_2 = 0.854 \text{ kg}/\text{m}^3$ , Sp. heat  $C_2 = 1.013 \text{ kJ}/\text{kg}^\circ\text{C}$  Conductivity  $\lambda_2 = 3.49 \times 10^{-2} \text{ w}/\text{m}^\circ\text{C}$ , Viscosity  $\mu_2 =$

$27.80 \text{ m}^2/\text{sec}$  Prandtl no.  $Pr_2 = 0.684$  Mass flow rate of air  $m \cdot 2 = \text{volume flow} \times \text{density} = 2.5 \times 0.854 = 2.14 \text{ kg}/\text{sec}$  Heat transferred from flue gas to air  $Q = m_2 \times C_2 \times (t_2 - t_2) = 2.14 \times 1.013 \times (250 - 25) = 488 \text{ kW}$  Assume the mean temperature of flue gas ( $t_{1m}$ ) is  $350^\circ\text{C}$ . At  $400^\circ\text{C}$ , the specific heat of flue gas  $C_{1m} = 1.1356 \text{ kJ}/\text{kg}^\circ\text{C}$ .  $t_{1m} = 250 - 25 = 225$   $137.5 - 140 = -2.5$   $+ = 135$   $10 - 2 = 13$   $6 - 10 = 6$   $285 - 285 = 0$   $'' = 1356 - 1356 = 0$   $' = 1356 - 1356 = 0$   $\cdot = 1356 - 1356 = 0$   $\cdot$  Mean flue gas temperature This is much higher than the assumed temperature

( $350^\circ\text{C}$ ). Reiteration shows that at  $t_{1m} = 367^\circ\text{C}$ , the flue gas outlet

temperature  $t''_1 = 284^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mean temperature is  $368^\circ\text{C}$ .

Hence,  $t_1 = 450^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $t''_1 = 284^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $t_{1m} = 368^\circ\text{C}$ . At  $368^\circ\text{C}$  the properties of flue gas are  $\rho_1 = 0.555 \text{ kg}/\text{m}^3$ ,  $C_1 = 1.1356 \text{ kJ}/\text{kg}^\circ\text{C}$   $\lambda_1 = 5.14 \times 10^{-2} \text{ w}/\text{m}^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $Pr_1 = 0.64$ ,  $\mu_1 = 55.30 \text{ m}^2/\text{sec}$  Reynolds number of flue

gas in tube Inner cross-section of tube Gas velocity in tube  $V_1 = 10 \text{ m/sec}$  Tube diameter  $d_1 = 0.05 \text{ m}$   
 Correlation for Nusselt number is  $h_1 = 0.41 \text{ Re}_1^{0.6} \text{ Pr}_1^{0.33} \left( \frac{\mu}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14}$   
 $\text{Re}_1 = \frac{V_1 d_1}{\nu} = \frac{10 \times 0.05}{1.63 \times 10^{-5}} = 306.7$   
 $\text{Pr}_1 = \frac{c_p \mu}{k} = \frac{1000 \times 1.63 \times 10^{-5}}{0.043} = 0.37$   
 $\left( \frac{\mu}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14} = \left( \frac{1.63 \times 10^{-5}}{1.63 \times 10^{-5}} \right)^{0.14} = 1$   
 $h_1 = 0.41 \times (306.7)^{0.6} \times (0.37)^{0.33} \times 1 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 Heat transfer coefficient from flue gas to tube ( $h_1$ )  
 Reynolds number of air flowing over tube bank is For flow over staggered tube bank, the correlation is  $\text{Nu}_2 = C \text{ Re}_2^m \text{ Pr}_2^n \left( \frac{\mu}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14}$   
 where  $\phi$  is the correction factor. For a tube bank with  $x_t = x_l$ ,  $\phi = 1$ , and  $C = 0.41$ . Hence,  $\text{Nu}_2 = 0.41 \times (1.19 \times 10^4)^{0.6} \times (0.684)^{0.33} = 101$ . Heat transfer coefficient from tube surface to air is  
 Overall heat transfer coefficient for heat transfer, Flue gas  $\rightarrow$  tube  $\rightarrow$  air is  $\lambda$  is the conductivity of steel tube. It is about  $40\text{-}50 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$ .

Hence, the middle term is neglected.  $h_1 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_2 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_3 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_4 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_5 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_6 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_7 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_8 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_9 = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{10} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{11} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{12} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{13} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{14} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{15} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{16} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{17} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{18} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{19} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{20} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{21} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{22} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{23} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{24} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{25} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{26} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{27} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{28} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{29} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{30} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{31} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{32} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{33} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{34} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{35} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{36} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{37} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{38} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{39} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{40} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{41} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{42} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{43} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{44} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{45} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{46} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{47} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{48} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{49} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{50} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{51} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{52} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{53} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{54} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{55} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{56} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{57} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{58} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{59} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{60} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{61} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{62} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{63} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{64} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{65} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{66} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{67} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{68} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{69} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{70} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{71} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{72} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{73} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{74} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{75} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{76} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{77} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{78} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{79} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{80} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{81} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{82} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{83} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{84} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{85} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{86} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{87} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{88} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{89} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{90} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{91} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{92} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{93} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{94} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{95} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{96} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{97} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{98} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{99} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 $h_{100} = 101 \text{ W/m}^2\text{C}$   
 The height (length) of one tube (single pass) can now be

calculated as the total area is known. On the air side the mass flow rate  $m_2$  and velocity  $V_2$  is

known. For the tube arrangement (staggered) and equal lat

eral and longitudinal spacing  $1.25 d_2$

where  $A_2$  is the total narrow clear air passage available in

a row

where  $n_c$  is the number of tubes in one row (across the flow). Total number of tubes is  $n = 287$  Number of tubes

placed longitudinally (along the flow) Hence the exchanger will have a matrix of  $25 \times 12$  tubes. A d n A d n 1 1 1 2 2 107 2 0 05 287 1 19 1 2 = . = = x x x = - p p p 1 lor m . . ~ . m V A • = 2 2 2 2 r A m V A d d n d c 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 14 0 854 6 0 418 0 055 1 2 = = x = = x = - x x = = • r . . . ) , . . Inter tube gap tube length (1.25 m, m 2 1 1 n c = - x x = - 0 418 1 25 1 0 0 055 1 2 25 3 25 . ( . . ) . . . ~ n n n c 1 = = - 287 25 12 ~

### 15.5 DRYING OVENS

Drying, i.e., removal of moisture (complete or partial) from substances, is an important unit operation in a large number

of processing industries. It is used in agriculture, raw vegeta

ble preservation, processed food, paper, textile, dairy, paint

ing, and many other processes. There are a number of drying methods available such as

freeze drying, solar drying, spray drying, and heat drying.

Consequently, a large variety of dryers is available in the mar

ket. The method and machinery for drying will have to be

carefully chosen to suit the raw material, drying conditions,

and desired quality and quantity of the product. In this book we will only consider drying by heating. For

a detailed treatment of all drying treatments, refer to special

literature. Consider a solid containing moisture or water at a tem

perature  $T_2$  (Figure 15.14 (A)). Hot air at temperature  $T_1$  is

flowing over the interface or boundary XY. As  $T_1 > T_2$  the

heat will flow from air to the interface at which heat trans

fer will take place by convection. From the interface the heat will flow in the solid by conduction as shown. Due to this heat, the moisture on the interface will evaporate and the vapor will be carried away by air. Moisture from the interior will then move by diffusion toward the interface. Thus, there will be a mass transfer flow set up from solid to

air through the interface. This will be because of the concentration gradient between the solid ( $C_2$ ) and air ( $C_1$ ). As

time passes, the moisture in the solid will decrease. Thus in

drying, there are two opposite transfer processes taking place simultaneously. Heat will be transferred from air to solid and moisture (mass) will be transferred in the opposite direction. The typical progress of drying with time is shown in Figure 15.14(B). Water in the solid may be free, loosely bonded, or chemically bonded. Loose and free moisture will be readily removed. Chemically bonded water is

difficult or sometimes impossible (uneconomical) to remove. **Figure 15.14 Heat and mass transfer in drying.** For heat transfer, the general equations are: (15.8) (15.9) Similarly, for mass transfer (15.10) (15.11) Equation (15.8) and Equation (15.9) are already intro

duced in Chapter 3. Equation (15.10) and Equation (15.11) are

mass transfer equations which are similar to Equation (15.8)

and Equation (15.9). Here,  $D$  = Diffusion coefficient  $m^2/sec$   $\beta$  = Mass transfer coefficient  $m/sec$

$C_1, C_2, C_w$  = Moisture concentrations in air, solid, and in

terface ( $\text{kg/m}^3$ )  $j$  = Mass flux  $\text{kg/sec}$  What was discussed earlier is a highly simplified version

of mass transfer in a typical drying operation. Mass transfer

is a separate special topic of interest to chemical engineers. Our

interest in this book is confined to heating design, and the dis

cussion above should be sufficient. The process information we need is drying curves as

shown in Figure 15.14(B), established at various air tempera

tures. This will enable us to decide the time and the tempera

ture required. As a rule, the highest possible temperature

should be chosen without damage to the quality of the dried

product. There are two reasons. First, the moisture carrying capacity of air increases rapidly

with temperature (see Appendix D). Secondly, the heat transfer

to the interior and the interface of the solid will also increase

with temperature. It is likely that at some air temperature, the  $q_h = h(T - T_c) = -1 \text{ W/m}^2 \text{C}$  from air to interface  $2 q = T - T_L = W = -1 \text{ ( ) } 2 \text{ m}^2 \text{C}$  from interface to interior  $2 j = D(C - C_L) = - \text{ ( ) } 2$  from interior to interface  $j = C - C_w = - \text{ ( ) } 1$  from interface to air

interface will acquire a constant temperature due to the absorp

tion of latent heat. The output desired ( $\text{Kg/h}$  at  $x\%$  moisture) will

lead to the choice and size of heating machinery. If the

basic process information is not available, it can be investigated by a simple laboratory procedure. Samples of a known surface area and weight are dried in an oven for a range of temperatures and time. Assuming that only simple drying takes place (i.e., without any chemical reaction) the moisture removed can be measured by loss of weight. A commercial batch-type drying oven is shown in Figure 15.15.

The wet objects are loaded in trays which may or may not be perforated. The trays are stacked on rocks. Hot air is passed over the trays. The air is heated by passing it over heaters arranged as tube bundles. Air supply is obtained by steam, electric heaters, or radiant tubes. After passing over the trays, the air acquires the evaporated moisture but has a lot of sensible heat. In some of the exhaust, the gases may be recirculated by mixing them with fresh intake air. The rest is released into the atmosphere through a stack. The exhaust stack and intake air should be sufficiently apart so that this fresh air is relatively dry and cool.

The proportion of recirculation is adjusted by using dampers. The operation will benefit by using dry air. However, large

scale drying of intake air is not economical. The same design

can be modified for continuous operation by providing entry and exit doors at positions X and Y, respectively (Figure 15.15). Another type of drier known as drum drier is shown in



Figure 15.16. Here the raw material is a liquid or paste, or dough. It is dried by passing over a pair of heated rollers.

These driers are used for milk, purees, mashes, etc. Note that

the product is heated from the bottom while moisture is evolved at the top surface.

#### 15.6 BAKING OVENS

Baking is defined as heating to a low temperature in an enclosure.

Traditionally, "baking" refers to cooking certain food

items such as bread and cakes in an oven. Technically, baking is used in a large number of nonfood related processes such as foundry (core baking), adhesive joining (curing), surface coating (vitreous enameling), paint drying and so on. Bread making requires baking at about 200-250°C. Core baking (CO<sub>2</sub>) is done at a similar temperature range. Porcelain enamel baking requires 800-850°C. Baking temperatures for painted articles are in the range 120-180°C depending upon the type of paint. In the baking of bread and similar items, a mixture of CO<sub>2</sub> and steam is evolved which is harmless. In some processes such as paint drying or adhesive curing, solvents and other gases are evolved which are likely to be harmful and combustible. Consequently, in industrial ovens, arrangements to safely dispose of the evolved gases is required. As the temperatures in baking are low (except enamel

Figure 15.15 Batch Type Drying Oven. Figure 15.16 Drum drier.

is used in a large number of nonfood related processes such

as foundry (core baking), adhesive joining (curing), surface

coating (vitreous enameling), paint drying and so on. Bread

making requires baking at about 200-250°C. Core baking

(CO<sub>2</sub>) is done at a similar temperature range. Porcelain enamel baking requires 800-850°C. Baking temperatures for painted articles are in the range 120-180°C depending upon the type of paint. In the baking of bread and similar items, a mixture of

CO<sub>2</sub> and steam is evolved which is harmless. In some pro

cesses such as paint drying or adhesive curing, solvents and

other gases are evolved which are likely to be harmful and

combustible. Consequently, in industrial ovens, arrangements

to safely dispose of the evolved gases is required. As the temperatures in baking are low (except enamel

ling) a large number of heat sources are available to the designer. Paint drying can be done by using high intensity or

infrared bulbs. Baking can be done with wood, electricity, or

indirect heating by gas or oil. Radiant tubes with gas or steam

are also suitable for many applications. Microwave heating is

already discussed in Chapter 10. Due to the diversity of processes and heating techniques,

a large variety of ovens is available. Some designs are shown

in Figure 15.17. A simple oven using wood or coal is shown in Figure 15.17 (A).

It is built of ordinary brick masonry and consists of two chambers. The lower chamber is for burning the fuel. It may have a grate and an ash pit in the bottom. The upper chamber is used for baking. The hot combustion gases rise above and circulate around the baking chamber before exhausting at the top. There may or may not be a door to the baking chamber.

Heat transfer is by conduction through the walls and convection around the chamber. Because of the brick work construction, the oven holds a lot of heat. The same design with a few

modifications can be adapted for oil burning by installing a burner in the lower chamber. A cabinet-type oven is shown in Figure 15.17(B). The arti

cles are kept in trays which are stacked on a rollout rack. The

oven may operate on an electrical heater or sealed radiant tubes or gaseous fuel (natural gas). In both cases, the heaters

or burners may be installed inside the cabinet. If oil burning

is used, the burner is located outside the cabinet and combustion

gases are circulated around the cabinet on the outside.

Thus heating is by convection. This avoids exposure of articles

to combustion gases which may give an objectionable odor. Food baking produces moisture, air, or carbon dioxide.

Many times, additional steam is injected to improve the crust of

the baked item. There is a separate exhaust for cabinet gases.

Many baking ovens for food have a rotating tray arrangements as shown in Figure 15.17 (C). This arrangement gives a better quality. The temperature and rotational speed is so

adjusted that baking is completed in one revolution. Baking ovens for high volume production such as breads,

cakes, and biscuits are of the continuous type. They use a moving

metal band or woven mesh through the oven. The general construction is similar to a continuous furnace discussed in Section 15.2.4 (Figure 15.4). The muffle and belts are made of

stainless steel or monel (Ni-Cu) alloys. A paint drying oven is shown in Figure 15.17. It is heated

by arrays of lamps with reflectors. Tungsten, carbon filament,

or quartz lamps are used. The article to be dried is suspended

by hooks that are moved through the oven by an overhead chain. The lamps have a limited life. The glass bulbs and reflectors are tarnished or blackened by the solvent vapors. However, the construction and maintenance is easy. Similar designs are used for enameling, with heating accomplished by radiant tubes. In both the cases, it is necessary to dispose of the solvent fumes through an exhaust fan and stack.

#### 15.7 FANS

We use fans for agitating or moving air or gases. In furnaces

or ovens, they serve as circulators, moving the atmosphere in

the enclosure. In heat exchangers or drying there are used as

a heat transfer medium. In some applications, ejectors or exhaust fans help remove the confined or slow moving gases.

In all such applications it is necessary to choose the correct fan

for satisfactory and economical operation. In this section we

will take a limited review of fans suitable in heating applica

tions. For more information consult special books or literature

by manufacturers. There are two basic types of fans. The classification is

based on the flow of air through the fan. In "axial flow" fans

(Figure 15.18(A)), the air enters and leaves along the axis or

the shaft. The fans are made as propellers with a number of blades (usually 2-6) attached symmetrically around a hub

fixed to a shaft. In passing through the blades, the air, gas, or

steam acquires a velocity and pressure head. F i g u r e 1 5 . 1 8 A x i a l o r p r o p e l l e r f a n . Radial flow or "centrifugal" fans (Figure 15.19(A)) have a

rotating cage or scroll with blades or slots at the outer periph

ery. The blades may be straight or inclined in, or opposite to,

the direction of rotation. Air is admitted at the center. It flows

toward the beds under centrifugal force and exits through the

slots. The cage rotates in a volute housing which collects the

existing air and discharges through a tangential outlet. For circulation in confined places such as furnace enclo

tures, axial fans are used. Here circulation and velocity are

more important than the volume. These fans help to homoge

nize the atmosphere and assist natural convection. In applications such as waste heat exchangers, cooling

beds, or drying, the volume required to be moved is large and

the pressure requirements are also applicable. Here we use

centrifugal fans. The main performance requirements are

volume, pres

sure, and velocity of discharge. One more criteria of consider

able interest to our purpose is the aerodynamic shape of the

discharge. This defines the extent or spread of the discharge

stream. This shape is very important in the choice of an axial

fan to be used as a circulator. The aerodynamic cone shape

depends on the profile of the impeller blades (Figure 15.18(B)).

The mechanical efficiency of fans is not very important to us

as the fans usually consume only a small fraction of the total

power of the furnace. Fans of all types display typical characteristics and are

governed by the "fan laws." These characteristics are shown by

the manufacturer on performance curves. They show the

behavior of pressure, power, and efficiency against percent

rated delivery ( $m$ ). If the fan is delivering to an open atmo

sphere without any restriction, the air delivered is 100%

rated. If the fan outlet is closed the delivery is 0%. The air

delivered at any delivery has a pressure (static)  $p$  and a veloc

ity  $v$ . We have seen in Chapter 2 that the velocity can also be

converted to pressure (Bernoulli's principle), hence the total

pressure of a fan at output is Static pressure velocity  
pressure Pa)  $= +\rho V^2$  ( Figure 15.19 Centrifugal fans or blowers .

where  $\rho$  is the air density. The fan characteristics usually  
show total and static pressures. The volume handled  $Q$  ( $m^3$   
) is

measured at the inlet and velocity is measured at the  
outlet by

dividing  $Q$  by the outlet area. The typical characteristics  
of axial and centrifugal fans

are shown in Figure 15.18(C), Figure 15.19(C). Note that  
these curves are not standard and will show some variation  
with the manufacturer's design. An important fact displayed  
by all fans is that they can be used over a wide range of deliv

ery and pressure. We will have to carefully choose the  
desired

combination. Manufacturers usually produce a range of fans  
with var

ious sizes. It will be worth noting the influence of some  
param

eters on the characteristics. The effects are roughly the  
same

for both types of fans.

Effect of Rotational Speed ( $N$  rpm)

Increasing the design speed will increase the swept volume  
and hence, the discharge  $Q$ . The total pressure and power  
will

also increase (power  $\propto N^3$  , pressure  $\propto N^2$  ). Change in  
fan size (wheel or propeller diameter)  $D$  will

also increase discharge  $Q$ , pressure ( $P \propto N^2$  ), and power

(power  $\propto N^5$ ). This assumes the speed to be same, i.e., design

speed. For an axial fan to be used in an enclosure, the size of the

latter will limit the maximum wheel diameter that can be accom

modated. In the case of a centrifugal fan, the fan's main require

ments are delivery and enough pressure to overcome ducting

resistance. Axial fans to be used at high temperatures ( $> 500$  as in

heat treatment furnaces) must be constructed from heat resis

tant materials such as inconel. They are usually operated at

slow speeds as their main purpose is atmosphere circulation.

Similar fans used in food or other ovens, can be fabricated

from stainless steels. Axial fans for high temperatures are not

standardized and will have to be designed by considering

creep and corrosion. Their drive motor and gear are located

outside, and the entry of the shaft and its bearings have to be

sealed and cooled. Centrifugal fans usually operate at ambient temperature

and are available in standard size.

## 15.8 SOME NEW MATERIALS

### 15.8.1 Carbon Foams

Foams made from basic materials like pitch or tar have recently

been made available in both graphite (crystalline) or carbon

(amorphous) forms. Presently, carbon foams are available at



a

competitive price. Typical properties of these foams are:

Density 0.27

(2.2) gm/cm Thermal conductivity

0.25-25 Electrical resistivity

- Maximum temperature 650 air, 3000°C

inert Tensile strength > 200

N/mm<sup>2</sup> The foams are available in several grades of strength and

density. Presently, they are being explored for applications

requiring adequate strength with low weight. Their heat resist

ing properties should find them suitable for high temperature

applications. They can be easily machined and coated or sand

wiched with metallic or ceramic materials. Incidentally, metal foams are also available. These foams

the characteristic metal properties such as electrical and ther

mal conductivity but have low densities. Presently, aluminium

and stainless steel foams are marketed.

#### 15.8.2 Alumina Refractory Adhesive

Ceramic fiber materials are already discussed in Chapter 7.

Boards and other shapes of these materials are extensively used in the construction of furnaces for walls and roofs.

The boards are anchored to each other or the furnace structure by using metallic fasteners such as hooks, staples, or wires. However, these fasteners are costly as they are made from heat resistant alloys. They also act as thermal short cir

cuits by providing a highly conducting path in an insulating

matrix. Recently, an alumina adhesive has been made available.

This is a single-part water-based adhesive. It can be used for

bonding low density (fiber) insulating materials. Thus, metal

lic anchors can be eliminated from wall or roof constructions.

### 15.8.3 Cast Basalt

Basalt is an igneous (volcanic origin) rock commonly occurring

all over the world. It has a greenish-gray color. Its main con

stituents are silicates of Ca, Mg, Fe, Al (feldspars). Some vari

eties of basalt can be melted and cast into a number of shapes

such as tiles and pipes. This material is very hard and wear

resistant. It can withstand temperatures up to 1000-1200°C

and is corrosion-resistant. It is extensively used in the lining

of exhaust and flue ducts of fuel burning furnaces. They resist

abrasion by ash particles in the gases. The material is also

available as ready-mix concrete and can be used for masonry

work of ducts.

---

# Bibliography

## CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION

Dryden, I.G.C., *The Efficient Use of Energy*. 2nd Ed., Butterworth Scientific, Oxford, 1982.

Glinkov, M.A. and Glinkov, G.M., *A General Theory of Furnaces*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1980.

Krivandin, V. and Markov, B., *Metallurgical Furnaces*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1980.

Trinks, W. and Mawhinney, M.H., *Industrial Furnaces*. 5th Ed., Vols. I and II, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1953.

## CHAPTER 2 FLUID DYNAMICS

Allen, J.E., *Aerodynamics: The Science of Air in Motion*. 3rd Ed., Allen Brothers and Father, Blythburgh, Suffolk, 1986.

Kazantsev, E.I., *Industrial Furnaces*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1977.

Nekrasov, B., *Hydraulics (For Aeronautical Engineers)*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1971.

Stampar, E. and Koral, R., (Ed.). *Handbook of Air Conditioning, Heating & Ventilation*, 3rd Ed., Industrial Press, New York, 1979.

## CHAPTERS 3 AND 4 STEADY STATE HEAT TRANSFER AND TRANSIENT CONDUCTION

- Bejan, A., *Heat Transfer*. John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1993.
- Carlslaw, H.S. and Jaeger, C., *Conduction of Heat in Solids*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1959.
- Heisler, M.P., *Temperature Charts for Induction and Constant Temperature Heating*. Trans ASME, Vol. 6.9, 1947.
- Incropera, F. and Dewitt, D.P., *Fundamentals of Heat and Mass Transfer*. 4th Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996.
- Isachenko, V.P., Osipova, V.A., and Sukomel, A.S., *Heat Transfer*. 3rd Ed., Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1977.

## CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 FUELS AND THEIR PROPERTIES AND FUEL BURNING DEVICES

- Francis, W., *Fuel Technology*. Vols. 1 and 2, Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1964.
- Kazantsev, E.I., *Industrial Furnaces*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1977.
- Roddan, M., *The Use of Fuel Oil in Furnaces for Iron and Steel Fabrication Industries*, Shell B.P.-Fuel Oil Dept., U.K., 1950.
- Saxon, F., Sedgewick, G., and Proffitt, R., *Industrial and Commercial Gas Installation Practice*. Vol. 3. Butterworth, Tolley Croydon, U.K., 2000.
- Technical Literature (Burners)*, Hauck Manufacturing Company, Lebanon PA, 1990.
- Technical Literature (Packaged Burners)*, ECOFLAM Company, Resana, Italy, 1999.

## CHAPTER 7 REFRACTORIES

- Brandes E.A. and Brook, G.B., *Smithells Metal Reference Book*. 7th Ed., Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford, 1998.
- Fanzott, S.M., *Modern Refractory Technique*. Springer-Verlag, Modern Industries AG & Co., Landsburgh, Germany, 1991.
- Kazantsev, E.I., *Industrial Furnaces*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1977.
- Technical Literature*, Didier-Werke AG, Wiesbaden, Germany.
- Technical Literature*, Harbinson Walker Co.

## CHAPTER 8 METALS AND ALLOYS FOR HIGH TEMPERATURE APPLICATIONS

- Brandes, E.A. and Brook, G.B., *Smithells Metal Reference Book*. 7th Ed., Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford, 1998.
- Metals Handbook*, Vol. I, 9th Ed., American Society for Metals, Metals Park, Ohio 1961.
- Robert E. Reed Hill, *Physical Metallurgy Principles*, D. Van Nostrand Reinhold, Princeton, NJ, 1964.
- Shrier, I.L., Jarman, R.A., and Burnsteirn, G.T., Ed., *Corrosion*, Vols. I & II, 3rd Ed., Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford, 1994.
- Wiggin Nickel Alloy, Wiggin Heat Resisting Alloys, Wiggin Nickel Alloys for Heat Treatment Equipment*, Henry Wiggin & Co. Ltd., Hereford, U.K.

## CHAPTER 9 ELECTRIC RESISTANCE HEATING

- Davies, E.J., *Conduction and Induction Heating*. IEE Power Engineering Series II, Peter Peregrinus Ltd., London, 1990.
- Kanthal Handbook, Resistance Heating Alloys for Appliances and Heaters*, Kanthal Heating Technology, Hallstahammar, Sweden, 1986.
- Kanthal Super Handbook*, Kanthal Furnace Products, Hallstahammar, Sweden, 1986.
- Paschkis, V. and Presson, J., *Industrial Electric Furnaces and Appliances*. 2nd Ed., Interscience, New York, 1960.

## CHAPTER 10 HIGH FREQUENCY HEATING

- Aguilar, J. and Rodriguey, J., Microwave as an Energy Source for Production of B-Sic *Journal of Microwave Power and Electromagnetic Energy*. Vol. 36, No. 3, 2001.
- Davies, E.J., *Conduction and Induction Heating*. IEE Power Engineering Series II, Peter Peregrinus Ltd., London, 1990.
- Meredith, R., *Engineering Handbook of Industrial Microwave Heating*. Institute of Electrical Engineers, London, 1998.
- Paschkis, V. and Presson, J., *Industrial Electric Furnaces and Applications*. 2nd Ed., Interscience, New York, 1960.
- Ryder, J.D., *Engineering Electronics*. 2nd Ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1967.

## CHAPTER 11 CONCENTRATED HEAT SOURCES

- Electron Beam Welding*. Commercial Literature, Leybold Heraeus Gmbh, Hanau, Germany.
- Ready, J.F., *Engineering Application of Lasers*. 2nd Ed., Academic Press, New York, 1977.
- Rykalin, N., Uglov, A., Zuev, I., and Kokora, A., *Laser and Electron Beam. Material Processing Handbook*, Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1988.
- Silfvast, W.T., *Laser Fundamentals*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1998.

## CHAPTER 12 VACUUM ENGINEERING

- Chamers, A., Fitch, R.K., and Halliday, B.S., *Basic Vacuum Technology*. 2nd Ed., Industrial and Physical Publishing, Bristol, 1998.
- Roth, A., *Vacuum Technology*. 3rd Ed., Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1990.
- Steinherz, H.A., *Handbook of High Vacuum Engineering*. Reinhold Publishing Corporation, New York, 1963.

## CHAPTER 13 PROTECTIVE ATMOSPHERES

- Hotchkiss, A.G. and Weber, H.M., *Protective Atmospheres*. John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1953.
- Metals Handbook*. Vol. 2, 9th Ed., Metals Park, Ohio, 1980.
- Trinks, W. and Mawhinny, M.H., *Industrial Furnaces*. Vol. II, 4th Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1967.

## CHAPTER 14 TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENT

- IR Answers and Solutions Handbook*. IRCON Inc, Niles, IL, 1999.
- Knight, J.R. and Rhys., D.W., *The Platinum Metals in Thermometry*. Publication No. 2244, Engelhard Industries Ltd., London, 1961.
- Leigh, J.R., *Temperature Measurement and Control*. Peter Peregrinus, London, 1991.
- Lide, D.R., (Editor-in-Chief), *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*. 80th Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2000.

- McGee, T.D., *Principles and Methods of Temperature Measurement*. Wiley Interscience, New York, 1988.
- Quinn, J.J., *Temperature*. Academic Press, London, 1993.

## CHAPTER 15 MISCELLANY AND FURTHER

- Bird, R.B., Stewart, W.E., and Lightfoot, E.N., *Transport Phenomena*. 2nd Ed., John Wiley & Sons, Singapore, 2000.
- Charms, S.E., *The Fundamentals of Food Engineering*. AVI Publishing, Westport, CT, 1998.
- Perry, J.N., (Ed.), *Chemical Engineers Handbook*. 3rd Ed., McGraw Hill, New York, 1950.
- Potter, N.N. and Hotchkiss, J.M., *Food Science*. 5th Ed., Chapman & Hall, New York, 1995.

## HANDBOOKS FOR GENERAL REFERENCE AND DATA

- Brands, E.A. and Brook, G.B. (Ed.), *Smithells Metals Reference Book*. 7th Ed., Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford, 1998.
- Kazanstev, E.I., *Industrial Furnaces*. Mir Publishers, Moscow, 1977.
- Lide, D.R. (Ed.), *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*. 80th Ed., CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1999.
- American Society for Metals, *Metals Handbook*. 9th Ed., Vols. I & II, Metals Park, Ohio, 1980.

